# FIRST LATIN LESSONS

SCOTT

Charles Marston Lee, D.M.,
Geneva College,
Beaver Falls,
Pa.

2823 Fourth Ave.,
Beaver Falls, Pa.

Lake Classical Series

# FIRST LATIN LESSONS

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT

Professor of Classical Languages in
Ohio University, Athens, Ohio

With Selections for Reading
from *Decem Fabulae*

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO NEW YORK

Copyright 1922, by
Scott, Foresman and Company

△

# PREFACE

The fact that the work of the first and second years of the high school Latin course should give value in itself, apart from being merely a preparation for later study, has come to be generally recognized. The number of Latin pupils whose study of the subject does not go beyond these first two years is very large in proportion to the total number studying Latin, and probably this has always been the case. But in the effort to provide for those whose capacities and opportunities make it possible for them to continue the study of Latin through the high school and into the college, the needs of the larger group whose opportunities were certain to be more narrowly limited have not always been taken into account. Further, the fact that the values which we recognized were so far in the distance has probably tended to diminish the number who chose to continue beyond the two-year stage.

Evidently one of the chief values to be gained from two years' study of Latin is a better knowledge of the English language. This should involve on the one hand a clearer comprehension of grammatical structure and on the other an enlarged vocabulary and an increased accuracy in the use of words. If these are to be among the major objectives, they should be recognized in the organization of the material which is first presented.

But young pupils will not study patiently mere lists of words for any long time. Words must be employed in the expression of thought if they are to make an impression on the mind of the boy or girl which is sufficiently vivid to add to the store of memory. The exercises through which the

vocabulary of the Latin language is to be made familiar should have something of the same kind of appeal as that made by the reading material employed in the first steps of learning to read the pupil's own language.

The material presented in this book has been prepared in accordance with the point of view above stated. Its distinctive features are the following:

1. The study of English derivatives is introduced from the first through exercises which illustrate the use of the words given.

2. The principles of English grammar are presented in connection with the early Lessons in such a way that they may be reviewed or studied if necessary, while they may easily be omitted with classes which have mastered them.

3. Connected paragraphs for translation are employed instead of isolated sentences, in order to make possible the more rapid acquisition of vocabulary.

4. The vocabularies and study of forms have been so arranged as to lead up to the reading of easy plays dealing with classical stories and myths, which are likely to make a more natural appeal to the beginner than *Caesar* or *Viri Romae*.

5. Regularly only one new principle or set of forms is introduced in a Lesson.

6. The Lesson vocabularies are small, never exceeding ten words and often not reaching that number.

7. A relatively small number of English sentences to be written in Latin has been given. In their place completion exercises have been employed, through which the pupil's attention can be concentrated on the specific usage to be taught.

8. Most of the irregular inflections have been postponed to the second year.

9. Only the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods of the verb are given. The forms and uses of the subjunctive

are presented in *A Junior Latin Reader*, the second book of this same series.

10. The small amount of syntax or form study given in each lesson, and the simplicity of the reading matter will commonly make it possible to complete a lesson in a single recitation. Naturally no such plan can be made to meet the needs of every class, and the teacher may sometimes choose to omit or leave for later review part of the exercises of a lesson.

The plays "Horatius", "Circe", "Polyphemus", "Reditus Ulixis", and "Medicus" are used by the kind permission of Miss Ryle, the only survivor of the co-authors of *Decem Fabulae*, from which they are taken.[1] A few changes have been made in the text of the plays, chiefly for the purpose of decreasing the vocabulary or avoiding idioms which seemed likely to prove difficult for young pupils.

The character *j* has been used to represent the consonant value of *i* in the spelling of Latin words in order to enable the young pupil to recognize more easily the relation between Latin words and their English derivatives. The origin of such words as *injury, juvenile, conjunction*, and the like is more readily seen by the beginner when the Latin words from which these words are derived are spelled *injuria, juvenis, conjunctus*, than when the classical spelling is used. Other variations from the classical spelling have been made for the same reason. Among them are *afficio, appropinquo, expecto*. The uncontracted genitive of *filius* and nouns in *-ium* is given to avoid confusion. The standard of spelling (including the use of *j*) represents in general the prevalent usage in Latin textbooks in this country and in England until a comparatively recent period. If the pupil should at a later time in his course use textbooks which employ a slightly different spelling he will have little difficulty in becoming accustomed

[1] Captains Paine and Mainwaring, who were Miss Ryle's associates in the writing of these plays, were numbered among those who gave up their lives in the World War.

to the forms which are used. Our Latin textbooks have never at any time been uniform in spelling, and it seems preferable in such a book as this to adopt the standard which will give the greatest value to the large number of those who are unable to continue the study for more than a few years.

The author wishes to make acknowledgment of obligation to Professor H. C. Morrison of the University of Chicago for encouragement in undertaking the preparation of this book, to Miss Marie Denneen of the University High School of Minnesota, Professor Victor D. Hill of Ohio University, and Professor F. W. Sanford of the University of Nebraska, who have kindly read the proofs. Professor Sanford and Professor W. L. Carr of Oberlin have also given valuable assistance in the preparation of the manuscript.

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT.

OHIO UNIVERSITY
ATHENS, OHIO

# CONTENTS


PAGE

PREFACE . . . . . iii

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . . xi

PRONUNCIATION . . . . . xiii

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR . . . . . xix

LESSON I. IMPORTANCE OF LATIN . . . . . 1

II. SUBJECT, OBJECT, AND PREDICATE (SINGULAR NUMBER) . . . . . 4

III. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES . . . . . 7

IV. PLURAL NUMBER: NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES 9

V. GENITIVE CASE . . . . . 12

VI. INDIRECT OBJECT: THE DATIVE CASE . . . . . 14

VII. INDIRECT OBJECT: THE DATIVE CASE (CONTINUED) . . 16

VIII. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES . . . . . 18

IX. PREPOSITIONS: THE ABLATIVE CASE . . . . . 20

X. NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION . . . . . 22

FIRST REVIEW LESSON . . . . . 26

XI. CONJUGATION OF sum IN THE PRESENT TENSE . . . . 28

XII. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT TENSE . 30

XIII. NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION ENDING IN -um . . 33

XIV. NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION ENDING IN -us . . 36

XV. NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION ENDING IN -er . . . 39

XVI. SUMMARY OF THE SECOND DECLENSION . . . . . 41

XVII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . 43

XVIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONTINUED) . . . . . 46

XIX. PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE . . . . . 49

SECOND REVIEW LESSON . . . . . 52

XX. DECLENSION AND USE OF hic . . . . . 53

XXI. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE . . . . . 56

XXII. SECOND CONJUGATION . . . . . 58

XXIII. DECLENSION AND USE OF ille . . . . . 60

PAGE

XXIV. Imperfect Active of the First and Second Conjugations . . . 62
XXV. Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective . . . 65
XXVI. Imperfect Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations . . . 67
XXVII. Declension and Use of is . . . 70
Third Review Lesson . . . 73
XXVIII. Future Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations . . . 75
XXIX. Imperfect and Future Indicative of sum . . . 77
XXX. Possessives of the Third Person . . . 79
XXXI. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -um, Masculine and Feminine Genders . . . 82
XXXII. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -um, Neuter Gender . . . 85
XXXIII. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -ium, Masculine and Feminine Genders . . . 88
XXXIV. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -ium, Neuter Gender . . . 90
XXXV. Perfect Tense, Active Voice . . . 93
Fourth Review Lesson . . . 96
XXXVI. Past Passive Participle . . . 98
XXXVII. Principal Parts: Stems of Verbs . . . 100
XXXVIII. Perfect Indicative Passive: Past Infinitive . . . 103
XXXIX. Verbs of the Third Conjugation Ending in -ō, Present Indicative . . . 106
XL. Verbs of the Third Conjugation Ending in -iō, Present Indicative . . . 108
XLI. Ablative of Means . . . 110
XLII. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation . . . 113
XLIII. Imperfect Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations . . . 116
XLIV. Reflexive Pronouns . . . 118
Fifth Review Lesson . . . 120
XLV. Future Tense of the Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Infinitives . . . 122

PAGE

XLVI. Relative Pronoun . . . . . 125
XLVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension with Two Endings and Three Endings . . . . . 127
XLVIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension with One Ending . . . . . 130
XLIX. Nouns of the Fourth Declension . . . . . 132
L. Conjugation of eō and Its Compounds . . . . . 134
LI. Expressions of Time with the Ablative and the Accusative . . . . . 136

Sixth Review Lesson . . . . . 139
LII. Imperative . . . . . 141
LIII. Conjugation of **possum** . . . . . 144
LIV. Personal Pronouns . . . . . 146
LV. Past Perfect Tense . . . . . 149
LVI. Declension of īdem . . . . . 151
LVII. Future Perfect: Synopsis of Verbs . . . . . 154
LVIII. Dative with Special Verbs . . . . . 157
LIX. Forms of Questions . . . . . 159

Seventh Review Lesson . . . . . 161

*HORĀTIUS* . . . . . 163
Vocative of Proper Names in **-ius** . . . . . 164
Declension of **quīdam** . . . . . 164
Conjugation of **volō** . . . . . 165
Declension of **aliquis** . . . . . 166

Lesson LX. Present Participle . . . . . 172
LXI. Ablative Absolute . . . . . 175
LXII. Quotations: Indirect Discourse . . . . . 178
LXIII. Nouns of the Fifth Declension: Impersonal Verbs . 180
LXIV. Cardinal Numerals . . . . . 184

*CIRCE* . . . . . 187
Dative with Compounds . . . . . 187
Ablative of Description . . . . . 188
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . . 190
Declension of Comparatives . . . . . 191

PAGE

Comparison of Adjectives in -er . . . . . 192
Special Adjectives in -lis . . . . . 193
Adjectives Compared Irregularly . . . . . 194
Formation of Adverbs . . . . . 195
Comparison of Adverbs . . . . . 196
Irregular Adverbs . . . . . 197

Exercises for Translation into Latin . . . . . 216

*MEDICUS* . . . . . 220
Latin Songs . . . . . 224-230
Grammatical Appendix . . . . . 231-273
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . . 275
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . . 294
Index . . . . . 301

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS


PAGE

Roman Farmer with Plow . . . . . 6
Roman Children at Play . . . . . 9
An Arch over a Roman Road . . . . . 11
Roman Writing Materials . . . . . 13
Roman Sword and Scabbard . . . . . 17
View of Ancient Rome (Reconstruction) . . . . . 25
Roman Seal Rings . . . . . 27
A View of the Roman Forum . . . . . 38
Roman Coins . . . . . 51
Three Roman Boys . . . . . 54
Roman Javelins . . . . . 55
Street of Pompeii . . . . . 69
Roman Drinking Cups . . . . . 72
Manner of Wearing the Toga . . . . . 80
Roman Standards . . . . . 91
The Capitoline Hill (Restoration) . . . . . 105
The Appian Way in the Time of Augustus . . . . . 112
Theater of Pompeii . . . . . 115
Roman Helmets . . . . . 124
View of Modern Rome from the Capitoline Hill . . . . . 138
Entrance to a Roman Fortified Camp . . . . . 143
View on the Appian Way . . . . . 153
Roman Spoons and Bowl . . . . . 156
Ruins of the Coliseum . . . . . 171
Roman Oil Vault . . . . . 174
Victims for a Roman Sacrifice . . . . . 180
Roman Lamps . . . . . 181
The Pyramid of Cestius . . . . . 182
Roman Table . . . . . 185
Roman Buckles . . . . . 259

# INTRODUCTORY LESSON

## PRONUNCIATION

I. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no **w**.

*a*. The letter *j* was not introduced until long after the time of the great Roman writers. Its sound was represented by *i*, which was used both as a vowel and as a consonant. But since *j* was used in the spelling of Latin words during the period in which the greater number of the English derivatives from Latin were brought into the English language, and since its use is helpful to beginners in learning the pronunciation of new words, it is retained in this book. The sounds of *u* and *v* were also represented originally by one letter.

### VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

II. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y.**[1] The other letters are consonants.

## THE ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

III. The vowels in Latin are either long or short. In this book long vowels are indicated by a mark placed above them. A vowel which is unmarked is short. The vowel sounds are indicated in the following table:

| | |
|---|---|
| **ā** = *a* in *father* | **a**[2] = first *a* in *ahá* |
| **ē** = *a* in *fade* | **e** = *e* in *net* |
| **ī** = *i* in *machine* | **i** = *i* in *this* |
| **ō** = *o* in *holy* | **o** = *o* in *domain* |
| **ū** = *u* in *rude* | **u** = *u* in *full* |

[1] **y** is seldom used. Its sound is the same as that of *u* in the French language or *ü* in German.

[2] Like **ā**, but pronounced more quickly.

IV. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be noted:

**c** and **ch** have the sound of *k*.
**g** has only one sound, that heard in *go*.
**j** is equivalent to *y* in *yes*.
**s** has only the sound heard in *say*.
**t** always has the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.
**v** has the sound of *w*.
**x** has only the sound of *ks*, as in *exercise*.
**bs** and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*.
**ph** and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*.

### DIPHTHONGS

V. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe,** and **ui.** Their sounds are as follows:

**ae** = *ai* in *aisle*
**au** = *ou* in *out*
**ei** = *ei* in *vein*
**eu** = *eu* in *feud*
**oe** = *oi* in *boil*
**ui** = almost[1] *ui* in *ruin*

### SYLLABLES

VI. A syllable is either a group of letters the sounds of which are taken together in pronunciation, or a vowel or diphthong which is taken by itself in pronunciation. The following words are divided into syllables by hyphens: *ac-ci-dent*, *re-li-a-ble*. A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong. The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are as follows:

(1) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō, ha-be-ō.**

(2) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows. But if the second of two consonants is **l** or **r,**

[1] The **u** is shorter than in the English word, and the vowels are more closely blended.

and if the combination can be pronounced at the beginning of a word, as **bl, br,** etc., the two are taken with the vowel which follows, like a single consonant[1]: **man-dā-re, car-dō**; but **fe-bris, ā-cris.**

### LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

VII. (1) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **dō-num, cau-tus.**

(2) A syllable is regularly long if its vowel is followed by two consonants: **con-dō, mit-tō.**

*a.* But if the two consonants consist of a mute[2] followed by **l** or **r** the syllable is short, unless it has a long vowel or a diphthong: **pă-tris.**

(3) All other syllables are short: **me-mor, a-grī.**

*a.* **x** and **z** have the value of two consonants because they represent a combination of sounds. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by either of these double consonants.

### ACCENT

VIII. In pronouncing a word of two or more syllables we make one of the syllables more prominent than any other. Thus in the word *mem-o-ry* we make the first syllable prominent. This prominence in pronunciation given to a syllable is called *accent.* In the word *memory* the accent is said to fall on the first syllable. The accent of Latin words is determined by the following rules:

IX. (1) In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **lū′men.**

(2) In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last, if it is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last: **au-dī′re, con-ten′tus, me′mi-nī.**

*a.* The syllable before the last is called the *penult;* the second from the last is called the *antepenult.*

---

[1] In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: **ad-it.**

[2] The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t, ph, th, ch.**

## THE ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

Latin words and phrases which are frequently used in English and proper names of Latin origin are commonly pronounced in accordance with what is called the English method of pronunciation. This represents in general the pronunciation of English words which are derived from Latin. While some variations are found, the following rules represent the most widely accepted usage.

### VOWELS

X. Vowels are either long or short. Their sounds are as follows:

| *Long* | *Short* |
|---|---|
| **ā** = *a* in *date* | **a** = *a* in *lap* |
| **ē** = *e* in *me* | **e** = *e* in *net* |
| **ī** = *i* in *fine* | **i** = *i* in *lid* |
| **ō** = *o* in *cone* | **o** = *o* in *lot* |
| **ū** = *u* in *pupil* | **u** = *u* in *luck* |

*a*. For a slight variation in the sounds of **a**, **e**, **i**, and **u** see section XIV.

NOTE. It is very important to observe that the long marks over the vowels in the exercises of this book and other Latin books do not indicate the long vowel sounds of the English method of pronunciation. They indicate the long sounds of the Roman method of pronunciation, and they are to be entirely disregarded when the English method is used, except in the influence of a long vowel in the penult as determining the accent.

### DIPHTHONGS

XI. The diphthongs are **ae**, **au**, **ei**, **eu**, **oe**, and **ui**. Their sounds are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **ae** = *e* in *me* or in *net* | **eu** = *eu* in *feud* |
| **au** = *au* in *author* | **oe** = *e* in *me* or in *net* |
| **ei** = *i* in *nice* | **ui** = *i* in *nice* |

### LONG VOWELS

XII. (1) A final vowel is long, with the exception of **a**: **mo-′nē, du′-rī.** For final **a**, see section XIV, 2.

(2) A vowel is long, if followed directly by another vowel or a diphthong[1]: **rē-′us, dī′-es.**

(3) A vowel in an accented penult (IX, 2, *a*) is long, if followed by a single consonant, or by the combination of a mute with **l** or **r**: **ar-mā′-tus, fē′-bris, fī′-nis.**

(4) The vowels **a, e,** and **o** in an accented syllable other than the penult are long when preceding a single consonant, or a mute before **l** or **r,** followed by **e, i,** or **y** before another vowel: **sā′-li-o, vē′-ni-a, hā′-be-o, ā′-cri-a.**

(5) The vowel **u** is long in any syllable except the last, before a single consonant or before a mute with **l** or **r,** except before **bl**: **mū′-ti-lus,** but **pub′-li-co.**

(6) In final **es** and in the plural ending **os** the vowel is long: **mi′-lēs, hor′-tōs.**

(7) In unaccented syllables other than the final syllable a vowel is long before a single consonant or a mute followed by **l** or **r.** The vowel **i,** however, in such syllables, is regularly short: **mā-tū′-ro, hō-no′-ris; Ē-tru′-ri-a,** but **ca′-dĭ-tis.**

### SHORT VOWELS

XIII. (1) A vowel in a final syllable ending in a consonant is short, except in final **es** and in the plural ending **os** and in **post**: **por′-tăt, mo′-nĕt,** but **mi′-lēs, hor′-tōs, pōst.**

(2) A vowel is short in any syllable before **x** or **z** or any two consonants except a mute followed by **l** or **r**: **tĕx′-o, pĕn′-do;** but **pā′-tris.**

(3) A vowel is short when followed by one or more consonants in any accented syllable except the penult: **mĭ′-li-tis, Cĭ′-ce-ro.** (See exceptions in section XII, 4, 5.)

(4) The vowel **u** is short before **bl**: **pŭb′-li-co.**

---

[1] A vowel which is separated from another vowel by **h** is pronounced as it would be if followed directly by a vowel.

NOTE 1. Before **tl** or **gl** any vowel is short: **Ăt′-las.**

NOTE 2. When **i** is preceded by an accented **a, e, o,** or **y,** and followed by another vowel, it has the sound of **y** in *yes:* **Pom-pe′-ius** (*Pom-pe′-yus*).

NOTE 3. In the combination **qu,** and commonly in **gu** and **su** before a vowel, **u** has the sound of **w: que′-ror, sua′-vis.**

NOTE 4. The sounds of **ae** and **oe** are long or short according as **e** in the same position would be long or short. **Caesar,** pronounced *Cē′-sar;* **aestimo,** pronounced *ĕs′-ti-mo;* **coepi,** pronounced *cē′-pi;* **coepimus,** pronounced *cĕp′-i-mus.*

### SPECIAL SOUNDS

XIV. (1) Before **r** followed by another consonant **a** is pronounced as in *far:* **ar-mo.**

(2) Unaccented **a** is pronounced like the final *a* in *America:* **ca′-sa.**

(3) Before **r, e** is pronounced as in *miner:* **a′-ger.**

(4) Before **r** in a monosyllable or a final syllable **i** is pronounced as in *bird:* **vir.**

(5) After **r** the sound of long **u** is like that of *oo* in *boot:* **ruber,** pronounced *roo′-ber.*

### CONSONANTS

XV. The consonants are in general sounded as in English words. The following special sounds are to be noted.

(1) Before **e, i, y, ae,** and **oe, c** and **g** have the sounds, respectively, of **s** and **j: cedo,** pronounced *se′-do;* **gero,** pronounced *je′-ro.*

(2) Before other vowels and diphthongs and before consonants **c** and **g** have the hard sounds: **cano,** pronounced *ka′-no;* **ecce** pronounced *ek′-se.* But **g** has the soft sound before another **g** which is followed by **e, i,** or **y: ag-ger,** pronounced *aj′-jer.*

(3) **ch** always has the sound of *k:* **charta,** pronounced *kar′ta.*

(4) Final **s** following **e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,** is pronounced **z**: **mīles,** pronounced *mī'-lez,* **urbs,** pronounced *urbz,* **ars,** pronounced *arz.*

(5) Sometimes **s** between vowels is pronounced as **z** because of the influence of the pronunciation of a derived English word: **rosa, causa,** pronounced *ro'-za, cau'-za* from the analogy of the derived English words *rose* and *cause.*

(6) When following an accented syllable, and preceding a vowel, **ci, si,** and **ti** are sounded as *shĭ;* **socius** pronounced *so'-shĭ-us,* **natio,** pronounced *na'-shĭ-o.*

(7) In like manner, **x** when preceded by an accented syllable and followed by **i** before another vowel, has the sound of *ksh:* **anxius,** pronounced *ank'-shi-us.*

*a.* But **ti** has the unmodified sound (as in *time*) when following **s, t,** or **x**: **Os'-ti-a.**

## ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

### THE NOUN

(1) Words which are used to denote persons or things are called *nouns.* Thus the words *boy, girl, house, tree, city* are nouns. Nouns are also used as the names of qualities or ideas, such as *bravery, kindness, happiness, truth, love, patriotism.*

### THE VERB

(2) In the sentences *The boy walks* and *The tree has fallen* the words *walks* and *has fallen* denote actions. Such words are called *verbs.* Some verbs denote mere existence or continuance in a place rather than action. In the sentences *He is in the city* and *We shall stay here, is* and *shall stay* are verbs.

### THE ADJECTIVE

(3) We often use some other word with a noun to tell something about the appearance or character of the person or thing to which the noun refers. Thus, in the expressions *tall trees* and *brave men* the words *tall* and *brave* tell something about the trees and the men. Such words are called adjectives.

*a.* There are a few adjectives which merely show what person or thing is meant without telling any quality of the person or thing. Such are *this, that, other, same. The, a,* and *an* belong to this class. These last three words are called *articles.*

### THE PRONOUN

(4) In the sentence *The man saw the boy, but did not speak to him,* the word *him* is used instead of *boy.* A word which is used instead of a noun is called a *pronoun.* Pronouns, as well as nouns, are used as subjects or as direct objects.

(5) The word instead of which a pronoun is used is called its *antecedent.* In the sentence given above *boy* is the antecedent of *him.*

### CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

(6) The pronouns *I, you, he, she, it, we,* and *they* are called *personal* pronouns.

When *who, which,* and *what* are used to introduce questions they are called *interrogative* pronouns. When they are used in sentences which are not questions they are called *relative* pronouns. Thus, in the sentence *Who gave you a knife? who* is an interrogative pronoun. In the sentence *It was my mother who gave me a knife, who* is a relative pronoun. Sometimes *that* is used instead of *who* or *which.* Thus, *The man that just came is my uncle.* When so used, *that* is a relative pronoun.

(7) Point out the nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs in the following sentences:

1. The heavy storm had injured many trees. 2. My father has read this book. 3. The horses draw a heavy load. 4. Your uncle built a new house. 5. My letter has been sent. 6. Where was the money found? 7. This picture has often been admired. 8. Why did these men leave their homes? 9. Columbus discovered a new continent. 10. These books contain many interesting stories.

# FIRST LATIN LESSONS

## LESSON I

### IMPORTANCE OF LATIN

#### LATIN IN ANCIENT TIMES

**1.** Latin is the language which was spoken by the Romans. After they conquered the nations living in the region which is now occupied by Spain, Portugal, France, Switzerland, and part of Austria, Latin began to be known here as well as in Italy, and it finally replaced in large measure the languages formerly spoken throughout this entire region.

#### MODERN LATIN, OR ROMANCE LANGUAGES

**2.** When the Roman empire gradually lost its power, and when the barbarians drove back the Roman armies, the influence of the Latin language still remained. The Spanish, French, Portuguese, Italian, and Rumanian languages are simply modern Latin. Many changes have taken place in the spelling and pronunciation of the Latin words which appear in these Romance languages, as they are called, and words have been introduced from other sources. But in the main these languages are Latin, and their relation to the language spoken by the Romans can easily be traced.

**3.** Many words in common use in French, Spanish, and the other Romance languages, have been very slightly changed from the original Latin form. Thus, the French word *arbre*, meaning *tree*, is from the Latin **arbor**; *terre*, meaning *land*, is from the Latin **terra**; and *vendre*, meaning *to sell*, is from the Latin **vēndere.**

The Spanish *agua*, meaning *water*, is from the Latin **aqua**; *mar*, meaning *sea*, is from the Latin **mare**; *amar*, meaning *to love*, is from the Latin **amāre.**

**4.** In the greater part of Austria and in part of Switzerland, Latin was displaced by other languages. But the extension of the Romance languages over South America and part of North America has more than made up for this loss.

The Spanish language is used throughout the whole of South America, with the exception of Brazil. In Brazil the language is Portuguese. Spanish is also the language of Mexico and is spoken extensively in parts of Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona, and to some extent in southern California. French is the language of part of Canada and is also spoken in some portions of Louisiana.

### THE LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH

**5.** In addition to the importance which Latin has through the Romance languages, it has also given us a great many of our English words. Latin had borrowed a number of words from Greek and many of these have come into English, so that it is difficult to decide in the case of some words whether their use in English is due to Latin or Greek influence. More than half the words in an English dictionary are derived from Latin and Greek.

### NEW WORDS FROM LATIN

**6.** The greater number of the new words which are being added to our language from time to time come from Latin or Greek. This is especially true of the names of new inventions. Such words as *submarine*, *automobile*, *telephone*, *tractor*, *motor*, *turbine*, are of this class. Further, the special terms used in chemistry, botany, physics, and other scientific studies, are of Latin or Greek origin.

### LATIN TERMS IN LAW AND MEDICINE

**7.** In the study of law, words derived from Latin are of very great importance. Such words as *jury*, *court*, *legal*, *conviction*, *acquittal*, and a great many other important words and

expressions which lawyers must understand come from Latin. In the study of medicine also a great many Latin and Greek words or derivatives are used. The words *medicine*, *sanatorium*, *hospital*, *invalid*, *doctor*, *patient*, come from Latin. When a doctor writes a prescription he generally uses Latin words or their abbreviations.

### THE FORMS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**8.** Some Latin words which have been taken into the English language have the same spelling in English as in Latin. Such are *census*, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *momentum*, *animal*. The meanings have in some instances changed, but the greater number of such words retain the same, or nearly the same, meaning as in the original Latin.

But most English words of Latin origin have been somewhat changed in their form. We shall see later that the spelling of many English words is explained by the development of the Latin words from which they have come, and that a knowledge of Latin aids one in remembering how to spell these words.

**9.** The following Latin words have familiar English derivatives or related words:

| | |
|---|---|
| īnsula, *island* | insular, insulation |
| nōn, *not* | non-conductor, non-interference |
| patria, *native country* | patriot[1], patriotic[1] |
| terra, *land* | territory[2], terra firma |
| Britannia, *Great Britain* | Britannic |
| Hibernia, *Ireland* | Hibernian |
| Italia, *Italy* | Italian |
| America,[3] *America* | American |
| Eurōpa, *Europe* | European |

[1] These words are derived through Latin from Greek.

[2] There is a Latin word **territōrium**, meaning *territory*, which is derived from **terra**, and from this word *territory* has come into English.

[3] While **America** does not represent a word known to the Romans, it is a Latin word in its formation.

## LESSON II

### SUBJECT, OBJECT, AND PREDICATE (SINGULAR NUMBER)

#### READING EXERCISE

**10.** 1. America patria mea est. America patria tua est. Americam amō. Americam amās.

2. Hibernia īnsula est. Britannia īnsula est. America nōn est īnsula. Italia nōn est īnsula.

3. Hibernia nōn est patria mea. Italia nōn est patria mea. Soror mea Italiam amat. Soror tua quoque Italiam amat. Italia est terra pulchra.

4. Hibernia est īnsula pulchra. Britannia quoque est īnsula pulchra. Britannia est magna īnsula. Hibernia est magna īnsula.

**11.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **amās,** you love | **mea,** my, mine |
| **amat,** loves | **pulchra,** beautiful |
| **amō,** I love | **quoque,** also |
| **est,** is | **soror,** sister |
| **magna,** large | **tua,** your, yours |

#### SUBJECT AND OBJECT FORMS, SINGULAR NUMBER: PREDICATE NOUNS

**12.** In the exercise above, the forms **America, Hibernia, Britannia,** and **Italia** are subjects, **Americam** and **Italiam** are direct objects; **patria, īnsula,** and **terra** are predicate nouns, and have the same form as subjects. All these nouns are in the singular number.

---

#### THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE: THE SUBJECT

(8) When we make a statement or ask a question, there is some word which indicates the person or thing about whom or about which we wish to say or ask something. Thus, in the sentences *The boy runs* and *The*

### THE ARTICLE

**13.** Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. The Latin equivalent for *The boy has a book* or *A boy has a book* means literally *Boy has book*. In translating a Latin sentence into English we supply *the*, *a*, or *an* whenever the sense requires.

### WORD ORDER, VERB AND ADJECTIVE

**14.** The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of its sentence, as in the reading exercise above. The Latin adjective often follows its noun. Thus in section **10** the Latin equivalent for *a beautiful island* is **īnsula pulchra.** But the adjective **magna** and other adjectives denoting size commonly stand before their nouns, as in English.

---

*letter was sent*, we say something about the *boy* and the *letter*. In the question *When did the storm begin?* we ask something about the *storm*. A word which is used in this way in a sentence is said to be the *subject* of the sentence. In the sentences given above *boy*, *letter*, and *storm* are the subjects.

### THE PREDICATE

(9) What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate*. In the sentences which have been given, *runs*, *was sent*, and *did begin* are the predicates.

A noun or adjective which is joined to the subject by a form of *to be* (*is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *will be*, *has been*, etc.) is called a predicate noun or a predicate adjective.

In the sentence *My brother is a teacher* the word *teacher* is a predicate noun. In the sentence *Your friend is unhappy* the word *unhappy* is a predicate adjective.

### THE DIRECT OBJECT

(10) Often the subject of a sentence is said to do something which directly affects a person or thing. In the sentence *The man helps his brother* the act which the subject does directly affects the brother. A word which is used to denote a person or thing directly affected by an act is said to be the *direct object*. In the sentence above, *brother* is the direct object. In like manner, in the sentences *My father built a house* and *The fire destroyed the city* the words *house* and *city* are direct objects.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

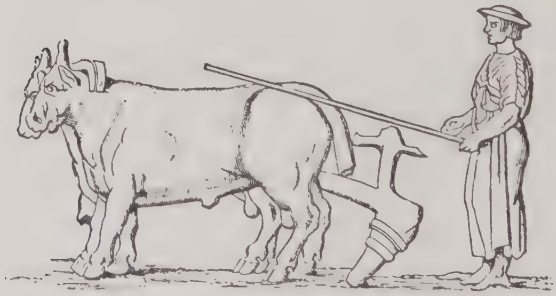
**15.** Copy the following sentences, putting the proper ending (**-a** or **-am**) in place of the dashes.

1. America est terr— pulchra.
2. Soror tua Americ— amat.
3. Soror mea Britanni— amat.
4. Patria mea terr— pulchra est.
5. Patria tua īnsul— est.
6. Īnsul— amō.

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing direct objects. 2. Write two English sentences containing predicate nouns. 3. Point out the nouns in section **10**. 4. Do you know the name of an English song in which the word *Britannia* occurs?



ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW

## LESSON III

### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

#### READING EXERCISE

**16.** 1. Agricola parvam fīliam habet. Parva fīlia agricolam amat. Agricola parvam fīliam amat. Soror mea quoque parvam puellam amat.

2. Agricola casam pulchram habet, sed casa nōn magna est. Casa mea quoque parva est. Parvam casam meam amō.

3. Parva puella epistulam habet. Epistula mea est. Cūr parva puella epistulam meam habet?

4. Patriam meam amō, sed patriam tuam nōn amō. Soror mea patriam tuam amat. Cūr patriam meam nōn amās? Patria tua nōn est America.

5. Britannia īnsula magna et pulchra est. Hibernia quoque est magna et pulchra. Fīlia tua Britanniam et Hiberniam amat.

**17.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **agricola,** farmer | **fīlia,** daughter |
| **casa,** cottage | **habet,** has |
| **cūr,** why | **parva,** small, little |
| **epistula,** letter | **puella,** girl |
| **et,** and | **sed,** but |

#### DIFFERENT ENDINGS FOR ADJECTIVES

**18.** In the reading exercise above, the adjectives which modify subjects or predicate nouns end in **-a**; those which modify direct objects end in **-am.**

A predicate adjective modifies the subject.

*a.* The Latin words for *your* or *yours* and *my* or *mine* are adjectives, and their endings, like those of other adjectives, depend on the words with which they are used.

### THE USE OF "DO" IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES

**19.** In English sentences containing the adverb *not* we commonly have *do* or *did*. Thus, *I do not work*; *he does not see*; *they did not go*. In Latin there is no word corresponding to this use of *do*. *I do not love* is in Latin **Nōn amō** (*I love not*).

### 20. EXERCISES FOR WRITING[1]

1. Soror mea casam pulchr— habet.
2. Casa est pulchr— sed parv—.
3. Cūr patri— me— nōn amās?
4. Parv— puell— est soror mea.
5. Parv— puell— amō.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**21.** 1. What English word is suggested by **agricola?** 2. In "The Courtship of Miles Standish," John Alden is said to have been "writing epistles important to go next day by the *May Flower*"; what are *epistles?* 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning and source of the abbreviation *etc.*

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing direct objects which are modified by adjectives. 2. Write two English sentences containing predicate adjectives. 3. Point out two predicate nouns in section **16.**

---

### THE ADVERB

(11) We often use a word with a verb to tell how an action is done. In the sentence *He runs swiftly* the word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done. Such words are called *adverbs*. Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs. In the expressions *too small* and *very swiftly* the adverbs *too* and *very* tell something about the adjective *small* and the adverb *swiftly*.

---

[1] In this exercise and, unless otherwise specified, in the exercises of the same character which are found in the lessons following, the sentences are to be copied by the pupil, with the proper endings supplied in place of the dashes.

## LESSON IV

### PLURAL NUMBER, NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

### READING EXERCISE

**22.** 1. Soror tua nōn multam pecūniam habet. Sed soror mea multam pecūniam habet. Soror tua pecūniam amat.

2. Agricola parvās fīliās habet. Parvae fīliae agricolam amant. Agricola parvās fīliās amat. Soror mea quoque parvās puellās amat.

3. Epistulae meae nōn longae sunt. Sed soror mea epistulās longās scrībit. Soror tua quoque epistulās longās scrībit. Soror mea et soror tua epistulās longās amant.

4. Britannia et Hibernia magnae īnsulae sunt. Italia et Hispānia terrae pulchrae sunt. Hispānia et Italia nōn sunt īnsulae.

5. Eurōpa multās īnsulās habet. Eurōpa terrās pulchrās habet. Eurōpam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

**23.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **amāmus,** we love | **multa,** much (**multae,** many) |
| **amant,** (they) love | **pecūnia,** money |
| **Hispānia,** Spain | **saepe,** often |
| **laudāmus,** we praise | **scrībit,** writes |
| **longa,** long | **sunt,** (they) are |

ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

### SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS IN THE PLURAL

**24.** In the sentences of section **22**, the nouns in the plural which are used as subjects or as predicate nouns end in **-ae**; those used in the plural as direct objects end in **-ās.**

### FORMS OF ADJECTIVES WITH PLURAL NOUNS

**25.** In the sentences of section **22**, adjectives which modify plural subjects or predicate nouns end in **-ae**; those which modify plural direct objects end in **-ās.**

### CASE NAMES

**26.** The subject is said to be in the *nominative case*, and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case*. The predicate noun is also in the nominative case.

---

### NUMBER

(12) We have different forms of pronouns and also of nouns to show whether we are referring to one person or thing or to more than one. Thus *I* refers to one person, *we* refers to more than one. This distinction is called *number*. *I* is in the *singular* number, and *we* is in the *plural* number. In the same way, *book* is in the singular number, and *books* is in the plural number.

### CASE

(13) Such pronouns as *he*, *she*, and *who* have different forms to show how they are used in sentences. We say *He walks*, *I see him*, and *I have his ball*. In these sentences *he* is subject, *him* is direct object, and *his* refers to a person as possessing something. In like manner we use *she* and *who* as subjects, *her* and *whom* as direct objects of a verb or as objects of a preposition, and *her* (or *hers*) and *whose* to denote the person possessing something.

A noun has the same form for the subject as for the object of a verb or a preposition, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus we say *The boy walks*, *I see the boy*, *I have the boy's ball*. These different forms and uses of nouns and pronouns in sentences are called *cases* or *case-uses*. The subject is in the *nominative* case, the direct object is in the *accusative* case, and the word referring to the possessor is in the *genitive* case (sometimes called *possessive*).

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**27.** 1. Parva puella epistul— (*letters*) me— habet. 2. Casae sunt parv— sed pulchr—. 3. America īnsul— (*islands*) pulchr— habet. 4. Soror mea et soror tua sunt puell— pulchr—. 5. Patri— me— amō. 6. Patri— tu— amās.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**28.** 1. What is meant by a *laudable* action? 2. What are *pecuniary* losses? 3. What is meant by *inscribe?* Find other English words suggested by **scrībit.**

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. From paragraph 2, section **22,** give the singular form of the object in the first sentence and the plural form of the object in the second sentence. 2. Write the accusative singular of **Hispānia** and the accusative plural of **casa.** 3. Point out the subjects, objects, and predicate-nouns in paragraphs 3 and 4 of section **22.**

AN ARCH OVER A ROMAN ROAD

## LESSON V

### GENITIVE CASE

### READING EXERCISE

**29.** 1. Agricola est amīcus nautae (*of the sailor*). Nauta est amīcus poētae. Poēta est amīcus fīliārum tuārum (*of your daughters*). Fīliae tuae poētam amant.

2. Poēta incola Americae est. Sed Italia est patria poētae. Poēta fīliam habet. America est patria fīliae poētae. Poēta Italiam amat. Fīlia poētae Americam amat.

3. Incolae īnsulārum sunt agricolae et nautae. Vīta agricolārum vīta bona est. Poētae saepe vītam agricolārum laudant. Vītam nautārum interdum laudāmus. Nautae multās terrās vident. Sed vīta nautārum perīculōsa est.

**30.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **amīcus,** friend | **nauta,** sailor |
| **bona,** good | **perīculōsa,** dangerous |
| **incola,** inhabitant | **poēta,** poet |
| **interdum,** sometimes | **vident,** (they) see |
| **laudant,** (they) praise | **vīta,** life |

#### LATIN NOUNS DENOTING POSSESSION OR OWNERSHIP

**31.** Latin nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-am** in the accusative singular have a form ending in **-ae** in the singular to denote ownership or possession and certain other ideas. The corresponding form in the plural ends in **-ārum.** This form is translated either by the English genitive (possessive) form, or by *of* and the noun. Thus, **epistula puellae** means *the girl's letter* or *the letter of the girl.* **Soror puellārum** means *the sister of the girls.* In translating a sentence with a form of this sort we should use whichever of the two translations makes the better sense.

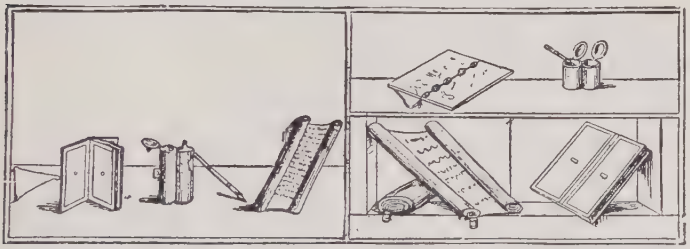
### THE GENITIVE CASE

**32.** The Latin nouns which are described in section 31 are said to be in the *genitive case.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive, and is in the same number as its noun.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**33.** 1. Nauta amīcus agricol— (*of the farmer*) est. 2. Soror mea epistulam puell— (*the girl's*) habet. 3. Hibernia patria naut— (*the sailor's*) est. 4. Soror parvārum puell— epistulās scrībit. 5. Incolae īnsul— (*of the island*) nautae sunt. 6. Incolae multārum īnsul— agricolae sunt.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**34.** 1. What is meant by the statement "They lived on *amicable* terms with each other"? 2. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *amiable.* 3. What is an *aeronaut?* 4. What is meant by great *vitality*?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive singular of **incola, nauta, poēta, vīta.** 2. Give the genitive plural of **casa, terra,** and **epistula.** 3. Write the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of the words for *girl, land,* and *island.*

## LESSON VI

### INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE

### READING EXERCISE

**35.** 1. Māter mea epistulam scrībit et epistulam parvae puellae (*to the little girl*) dat. Parva puella epistulam agricolae dat. Agricola epistulam legit. Agricola mihi epistulam dat. Pecūniam agricolae dō. Agricola parvae puellae pecūniam dat. Parva puella pecūniam Cornēliae dat. Cornēlia est māter parvae puellae.

2. Māter mea dōnum parvīs puellīs (*to the little girls*) dat. Parvae puellae laetae sunt. Māter mea parvās puellās amat.

3. Nautae epistulās dō. Nauta epistulās incolīs īnsulārum dat. Incolae īnsulārum pecūniam nautae dant. Nauta mihi pecūniam dat.

**36.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **Cornēlia,** Cornelia | **laeta,** happy |
| **dant,** (they) give | **legit,** reads |
| **dat,** gives | **māter,** mother |
| **dō,** I give | **mihi,** to me, me (*as indirect object*) |
| **dōnum,** gift, present | |

### LATIN NOUNS AS INDIRECT OBJECTS

**37.** In the reading exercise above, the forms **puellae** and **agricolae** in the first and second sentences of 1, and **puellīs** in the first sentence of 2 are indirect objects.

Nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-ae** in the genitive singular have the ending **-ae** in the singular and **-īs** in the plural when used as indirect objects.

---

### THE INDIRECT OBJECT

(14) A noun or pronoun which is used to denote the person to whom something is given, said, or shown is said to be an *indirect object.* In the sentences *He gave his sister a picture* and *My brother told me an interesting story* the words *sister* and *me* are indirect objects.

### PHRASES WITH *TO* EQUIVALENT TO INDIRECT OBJECTS

**38.** Instead of saying *I gave the girl a letter* we may express the same idea by saying *I gave a letter to the girl.* In the second sentence *to the girl* takes the place of the indirect object *girl* in the first. A phrase consisting of *to* and a noun, when used in the place of an indirect object, is translated in Latin by the same form as the indirect object. That is, either *girl* in the first of the sentences above or *to the girl* in the second will be translated **puellae.**

### THE DATIVE CASE

**39.** A Latin noun used as an indirect object is said to be in the *dative case.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the dative is also in the dative, and is in the same number as its noun.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**40.** Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. The farmer gives a letter to the poet.
2. The poet gives money to the farmer.
3. I give a present to the little girls.
4. The little girls give me a letter.
5. Your daughter gives money to the sailor.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**41.** 1. What connection can you see between the word *dative* and any Latin word in the vocabulary of this lesson? 2. What is a *donation?* 3. What is *legible* handwriting? 4. What is *maternal* care?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out the indirect objects in 1 of section **35.** 2. Write two English sentences each containing a direct and an indirect object. 3. Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin words for *letter* and *cottage.*

## LESSON VII

### INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE (Continued)

#### READING EXERCISE

**42.** 1. Māter tua Cornēliae dōnum dat. Cornēlia fīliae agricolae dōnum ostendit. Fīlia agricolae quoque dōnum cupit, sed māter tua fīliae agricolae dōnum nōn dat.

2. Agricolae epistulās dō, et agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Agricola epistulās legit. Agricola epistulās fīliae ostendit, sed fīlia epistulās nōn legit.

3. Puella mihi casam poētae mōnstrat. Casa est parva. Poētam nōn videō, sed fīliam poētae interdum videō. Fīlia poētae parvam casam amat.

4. Poēta fīliae pictūram dat. Fīlia poētae mihi pictūram ostendit. Pictūram laudō et poētam laudō. Fīlia poētae est laeta puella.

5. Nauta mihi fābulam nārrat. Māter mea quoque mihi interdum fābulās nārrat. Soror mea multās fābulās legit et saepe parvīs puellīs fābulās nārrat. Parvae puellae fābulās amant.

**43.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **cupit,** wishes, desires | **nārrat,** tells |
| **fābula,** story | **ostendit,** shows |
| **laudō,** I praise | **pictūra,** picture |
| **mōnstrat,** points out | **videō,** I see |

#### OMISSION OF PRONOUN AS SUBJECT

**44.** We have seen that **amō** is translated *I love*, without a separate word for *I*. In the same manner **amat,** which is translated *loves* when used with a noun as subject, may be translated *he loves* or *she loves* when the preceding sentence makes it perfectly clear who the subject is. When we have

been talking about a man we may say **patriam amat,** meaning, *he loves his country.*

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**45.** 1. Māter mea fīli— tu— (*your daughter*) dōnum dat. 2. Epistulās saepe naut— (*to the sailors*) dō. 3. Agricola poēt— (*the poet*) pecūni— dat. 4. Poēta agricol— (*the farmer*) epistul— me— ostendit. 5. Puella naut— (*to the sailor*) cas— me— mōnstrat. 6. Soror tua agricol— (*the farmer*) epistul— (*the letters*) ostendit.

ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *to* which are equivalent to indirect objects. 2. Rewrite the last sentence in 4 of section **42,** changing the subject to the plural, and making any other necessary change. 3. Point out the indirect objects in section **42.** 4. Rewrite the last sentence of 5, section **42,** changing the subject to the singular and making any other changes which are necessary.

---

### THE CONJUNCTION

(15) The words *and, but,* and *or* are used to join words or parts of sentences. In the sentence *Your father and mother are not in the city* the word *and* is used to join the words *father* and *mother.* In like manner, in the sentence *The train is late, but it will soon arrive* the word *but* joins the two parts of the sentence *The train is late* and *it will soon arrive.* Such words are called *conjunctions.* Conjunctions of a somewhat different kind are *because, although, if,* and some other words. In the sentence *I shall go if I receive the letter* the conjunction *if* is used to join the verb *shall go* and *I receive the letter.*

## LESSON VIII

### DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

### READING EXERCISE

**46.** 1. Epistula mea agricolae (*to the farmer*) grāta est. Agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Pecūniam nautae dō. Pecūnia nautae grāta est.

2. Fīlia tua parvae puellae benigna est. Parva puella fīliam tuam amat. Fīlia tua parvae puellae rosam dat. Rosa puellae grāta est.

3. Poētae Italiam saepe laudant. Italia poētīs cāra est. Sed patria mea mihi cāra est.

4. Epistulam fīliae tuae nōn laudō. Epistula longa est, sed mihi nōn grāta est. Fīlia tua nōn bene scrībit. Sed epistula tibi grāta est.

5. Fenestram casae tuae videō. Fenestra parva est. Casa agricolae multās fenestrās habet.

6. America multās silvās habet. Silvae Americae magnae sunt. Hibernia magnās silvās nōn habet.

**47.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **bene,** well | **grāta,** pleasing |
| **benigna,** kind | **rosa,** rose |
| **cāra,** dear | **silva,** forest |
| **fenestra,** window | **tibi,** to you |

#### ADJECTIVES WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE

**48.** In the first sentence of the reading exercise above, **agricolae,** *to the farmer,* is in the dative. With adjectives meaning *dear, pleasing, kind, friendly, near,* and the like, the dative is often used to express an idea which is expressed in English by *to* and a noun or pronoun.

#### POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

**49.** (1) The genitive commonly stands after the word on which it depends, even though the corresponding English word

denoting possession would stand first. Thus *the poet's cottage* may be translated **casa poētae.**

(2) The dative commonly stands before the word on which it depends. The words *kind to me* translated into Latin would take the order *to me kind.*

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**50.** 1. Pecūnia agricol— (*to the farmer*) grāta est. 2. Italia poēt— (*to the poet*) cāra est. 3. Soror mea fīli— tu— (*to your daughter*) benigna est. 4. Epistul— tu— mihi nōn grātae sunt. 5. Rosae parv— puell— (*to the little girls*) grātae sunt. 6. Rosam parv— puell— (*to the little girl*) dō.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**51.** 1. Give two English words of which **bene** is a component part. 2. What is meant by a *benignant* influence? 3. What connection in meaning can you see between **grāta** and *gratify?* 4. Complete the following formula: *rose* : **rosa** : : *fame* : *x*; that is, replace *x* by a word which bears the same relation to *fame* which **rosa** bears to *rose.*

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out all the datives in section **46.** 2. Rewrite the first sentence in 2 of section **46,** changing the subject to the plural. 3. Rewrite the third sentence in 2 of section **46,** changing the direct and indirect objects to the plural.

---

### PERSON

(16) The pronoun *I* and its plural *we* refer to the person or persons speaking, and are said to be in the *first person; you* refers to the person to whom one is speaking and is said to be in the *second person; he, she,* and *it* (plural *they*) refer to a person or thing spoken of, and are said to be in the *third person.* Nouns are ordinarily in the third person.

## LESSON IX

### PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE

### READING EXERCISE

**52.** 1. Poēta casam in īnsulā habet. Casa mea quoque ibi est, et saepe poētam videō. Ex fenestrīs casae meae silvam videō. Silva pulchra est, et saepe ibi ambulō. Saepe cum poētā in silvā ambulō. Poēta silvam amat.

2. Soror mea et soror tua nunc in viīs ambulant. Māter tua et māter mea interdum cum puellīs ambulant. Sed nunc māter tua in casā est. Mea māter in Americā nōn est.

3. Māter mea nunc in Hispāniā est. Soror poētae in Britanniā est cum fīliā Cornēliae. Cornēlia in Hiberniā quoque fīliam habet. Māter mea epistulās ex Hispāniā scrībit.

**53.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **ambulant,** (they) walk | **ibi,** there, in that place |
| **ambulō,** I walk | **in,** in, on |
| **cum,** with | **nunc,** now |
| **ex,** from | **via,** street, road, way |

### THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

**54.** As seen above, *there*, meaning *in that place*, is in Latin **ibi.** But in such sentences as *There is no danger* we use *there* merely to introduce the sentence, and no idea of place is expressed. When thus used *there* is called an *expletive.* Latin has no equivalent for this expletive use of *there*, and the sentence *There is no danger* will be translated as if it read *No danger is.* In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject.

### LATIN NOUNS GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS

**55.** In the reading exercise above, **īnsulā** in the first sentence of 1 is governed by **in**; in the second sentence of 2 **puellīs**

is governed by **cum,** and in the third sentence of 1 **fenestrīs** is governed by **ex.** The letter **ā,** in which **īnsulā** ends, is long, while the form of the nominative ends in (short) **a.**

### THE ABLATIVE

**56.** Latin nouns or pronouns governed by prepositions meaning *from, in,* or *with* are said to be in the *ablative case.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative case is also put in the ablative, and is in the same number as its noun.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**57.** 1. Casae in īnsul— (*the islands*) sunt. 2. Parv— puell— in vi— (*the street*) ambulant. 3. Soror mea cum parv— puell— (*the little girls*) ambulat. 4. Īnsul— (*islands*) ex me— fenestr— (*window*) videō. 5. Cornēlia nōn est in Hispāni— cum fīli— (*the daughter*) poētae.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**58.** 1. What is a *perambulator?* 2. Find the literal meaning of the name *Pennsylvania* (English words derived from **silva** usually have *syl-* for the Latin **sil-**). 3. What is the meaning of *via* as used in railroad time tables?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **silva** in the singular number. 2. Write all the case forms of **puella** in the plural number, following the order of cases given above. 3. Point out the ablatives and the datives in section **52.**

---

### THE PREPOSITION

(17) There is a class of small words such as *of, in, with, by, from,* which are used with nouns or pronouns. The combination of one of these words and the noun or pronoun which is used with it serves to tell something about an act or about a person or thing. These words are called *prepositions.* The noun or pronoun which follows a preposition is called its *object,* or the preposition is said to *govern* the noun or pronoun which follows it. In the sentence *I live in the city* the word *city* is the object of *in.*

## LESSON X

### FIRST DECLENSION

#### THE CASE FORMS OF *ROSA*

**59.** The different case forms of the noun **rosa** with their meanings are as follows:

*Singular Number*

| | |
|---|---|
| NOM. | rosa, *a rose* (as subject or predicate) |
| GEN. | rosae, *of a rose, rose's* |
| DAT. | rosae, *to a rose, rose* (as indirect object) |
| ACC. | rosam, *rose* (as direct object) |
| ABL. | rosā, (*from, with, in, on*) *a rose* |

*Plural Number*

| | |
|---|---|
| NOM. | rosae, *roses* (as subject or predicate) |
| GEN. | rosārum, *of roses* |
| DAT. | rosīs, *to the roses, roses* (as indirect object) |
| ACC. | rosās, *roses* (as direct object) |
| ABL. | rosīs, (*from, with, in, on*) *roses* |

**60.** The following sentences illustrate the use of the Latin cases:

The rose (**rosa**) is beautiful.
The fragrance of the rose (**rosae**) is delightful.
The sunshine has given color to the rose (**rosae**).
The girl is carrying a rose (**rosam**).
The butterfly is on the rose (**in rosā**).

The roses (**rosae**) are beautiful.
The fragrance of the roses (**rosārum**) is delightful.
The sun has given color to the roses (**rosīs**).
The girl is carrying roses (**rosās**).
The butterflies are on the roses (**in rosīs**).

### THE FIRST DECLENSION

**61.** Nouns which form their cases with the same endings as those of **rosa** are said to belong to the *first declension*. All nouns with the nominative ending in **-a** and the genitive in **-ae** are of the first declension.

*a.* In the vocabularies hereafter the nominative of new nouns of the first declension will be given, with the genitive ending printed after the nominative to show that the noun is of the first declension. Thus **lūna, -ae** indicates that **lūna** is a first declension noun.

### CASE OF NOUNS IN APPOSITION

**62.** A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains.

**Fīlia tua Cornēlia in viā stat,** *your daughter Cornelia is standing in the street.*

### READING EXERCISE

**63.** 1. Casa nostra magnās fenestrās habet. Fenestrae sunt apertae. Ex fenestrīs viās vidēmus. Fīliae agricolae in viīs ambulant.

2. Māter tua puellās expectat. Puellae ex scholā properant. Soror tua cum puellīs est. Puellae laetae sunt. Māter tua nunc puellās videt.

3. Schola nostra est magna. Scholam nostram laudāmus.

---

### APPOSITION

(18) Sometimes two nouns, or a pronoun and a noun, denoting the same person or thing are put side by side, without a verb being used to connect them. The second is used to explain the first by making known some fact or by telling more definitely who or what is meant. Thus, *A boy, a friend of my brother, is visiting at my home.* The word *friend* denotes the same person as *boy*, and serves to make known a fact regarding the boy. A noun used in this way is called an *appositive*, and is said to be in apposition with the word which it explains. In the sentence above, *friend* is in apposition with *boy*.

In scholā nostrā linguam Latīnam discimus. Fāma scholae nostrae bona est.

4. Scholae Americae sunt multae et bonae. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae quoque sunt scholae bonae. Sed Hispānia nōn habet multās scholās. Incolae Eurōpae scholās Americae saepe laudant.

**64.** VOCABULARY

**aperta,** open
**discimus,** we learn
**expectat,** awaits, waits for
**fāma,** reputation
**Latīna,** Latin
**lingua,** language
**nostra,** our
**properant,** (they) hasten, hurry
**schola,** school
**vidēmus,** we see

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**65.** 1. Viam ex apert— fenestr— (*the open windows*) videō. 2. Soror mea ex schol— properat. 3. Soror tua nōn est cum parv— puell— (*the little girl*). 4. Sunt mult— schol— in Americ—. 5. Cornēlia fīliam poēt— expectat. 6. Agricola Cornēli— expectat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**66.** 1. What is an *aperture?* 2. Find from a dictionary the original meaning of *disciple.* 3. What is meant by a *bilingual* country? 4. What is an *expectant* attitude?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write out in full the declension of the nouns **lingua** and **schola.** 2. Write out the declension of the phrase **casa mea.** 3. Name the three prepositions which have been used with the ablative in the lessons thus far. 4. Write an English sentence containing a phrase with *to* which is equivalent to an indirect object.

VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (RECONSTRUCTION)

## FIRST REVIEW LESSON

**67.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS I–X

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| agricola | dō | dant |
| amīcus | laudō | laudant |
| casa | ostendō | properant |
| dōnum | videō | habent |
| epistula | | vident |
| fābula | amās | sunt |
| fāma | amat | |
| fīlia | dat | bene |
| incola | expectat | cūr |
| lingua | mōnstrat | |
| māter | nārrat | ibi |
| nauta | habet | interdum |
| pecūnia | cupit | nunc |
| poēta | legit | quoque |
| puella | scrībit | saepe |
| rosa | est | |
| schola | | cum |
| silva | amāmus | ē, ex |
| soror | laudāmus | in |
| via | vidēmus | |
| vīta | discimus | et |
| | | sed |
| ambulō | amant | |
| amō | ambulant | |

WORD STUDY

**68.** We have seen (page 3) that many English words, such as *terminus, stimulus, veto, animal, census,* were originally Latin words, and have been taken into English without change of spelling. Others, such as *humble, count, blame, sure,* are greatly changed from their original Latin form, because they

have not come directly from Latin, but were developed in French from Latin, with changed pronunciation and spelling, and were taken from French into English. Sometimes the meaning as well as the form of these words has changed, but usually we can recognize the original meaning.

**69.** We often find a group of Latin words which are related in derivation and meaning. Thus **amō, amor, amīcus, amīcitia, amābilis, inimīcus, inimīcitia** have a common element. We shall see later something of how Latin words are formed. We sometimes say that an English word is related in derivation to a certain Latin word, although it does not come directly from that word, but from another word which is derived from the Latin word given. Thus, we may say the word *amiable* is related in derivation to the Latin **amō,** although it comes more directly from **amābilis,** which in turn is from **amō.** Some of the Latin words from which our English words are directly derived were not often used by good Latin writers, and therefore the derivation of the English word is more easily explained by a related Latin word of common use.

**70.** There are certain changes of spelling which we find in the development of English words from Latin. Thus, Latin words ending in **-tia** often give English words in *-ce* (occasionally *-cy*). For example, *temperance* is from **temperantia,** *patience* from **patientia,** *clemency* from **clēmentia.** Other changes will be explained later.

EXERCISE

Select twelve nouns from the Review Vocabulary on page 26, from which you can find English derivatives. Give the meaning of these derivatives.

ROMAN SEAL RINGS

## LESSON XI

### CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

#### THE FORMS OF *SUM*

**71.** The forms of the Latin verb **sum** meaning *I am* are as follows when referring to present time:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1ST PERSON | sum, *I am* | sumus, *we are* |
| 2D PERSON | es, *you* (singular) *are* | estis, *you* (plural) *are* |
| 3D PERSON | est, (*he, she, it*) *is* | sunt, (*they*) *are* |

*a.* In English *you* may denote one person or more than one. We say *You are my friend* when speaking to one person, and *You are my friends* when speaking to two or more persons. Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of this pronoun. The verb forms used to denote an act of the persons or person spoken to also differ according as the subject is singular or plural. In Latin the word used for *are* in translating *You are my friend* would be different from that used for *are* in translating *You are my friends*, because the subject, *you*, denotes one person in the first sentence and more than one in the second.

#### READING EXERCISE

**72.** 1. Incola Britanniae sum. Soror mea incola Hiberniae est. Sed patria nostra est America, et amicī patriae nostrae sumus.

---

#### PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

(19) In some tenses a verb has a different form when its subject is in the first person from what it would have if the subject were in the third person. Thus we say *I walk*, but *he walks*. The third person plural also differs from the third person singular. Thus, *he walks*, *they walk*. A verb is said to be in the same person and number as its subject.

2. Nunc in Americā es, sed America nōn est patria tua. Cūr nōn amīcus Americae es? Cūr Americam nōn amās?

3. Nunc in Italiā estis. In Italiā sumus. Italia est terra pulchra. Sed Italia nōn est patria nostra. Italiam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

4. Ex fenestrā meā noctū stellās spectō. Saepe lūnam quoque spectō. Lūna nunc obscūra est, sed stellae clārae sunt.

5. Ex viā fenestram tuam vidēmus. Fenestra aperta est. Soror tua ex fenestrā puellās in viā spectat. Cūr soror tua nōn in viā cum puellīs est?

6. Soror mea aegra est. Māter mea est misera quod soror mea est aegra.

**73.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **aegra,** ill | **noctū,** at night |
| **amīcī,** friends | **obscūra,** dim |
| **clāra,** bright, clear; famous | **quod,** because |
| **lūna, -ae,** F., moon | **spectō,** I watch, look at |
| **misera,** unhappy | **stella, -ae,** F., star |

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**74.** Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. I am now an inhabitant of America.
2. The poet's daughters are in Ireland.
3. You are in a beautiful country.
4. We are in the cottage with the sailor.
5. I am watching (I watch) the stars, but I do not see the moon.

---

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

(20) A verb which takes a direct object is called a *transitive verb*. In the sentence *I saw the fire*, the verb *saw* is transitive. A verb which does not take a direct object is called an *intransitive verb*. In the sentence *We walked in the park*, the verb *walked* is intransitive.

#### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**75.** 1. What is the meaning of *clarify?* What part of speech is it? 2. What is a *lunar* eclipse? 3. Find two English verbs derived from **spectō** with a syllable placed before **-spect-**. 4. What is a *constellation?*

---

#### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Change the verbs of the first two sentences in paragraph 3, section **72,** to the singular number. 2. Change the verb of the second sentence of paragraph 5, section **72,** to the plural number, making such other changes as are necessary. 3. Decline together **magna stella.**

---

## LESSON XII

### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### THE VERB *PORTŌ*

**76.** The forms of **portō,** *I carry,* when referring to present time and representing the subject as doing the act expressed by the verb are as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| 1ST PERSON | portō, *I carry* | portāmus, *we carry* |
| 2D PERSON | portās, *you carry* | portātis, *you carry* |
| 3D PERSON | portat *he, she, it carries* | portant, *they carry* |

*a.* The forms given above may also be translated *I am carrying, you are carrying, he is carrying,* etc. Latin has no means of distinguishing between such expressions as *I carry* and *I am carrying, he praises* and *he is praising, they walk* and *they are walking.*

*b.* To *conjugate* a verb means to give its different forms in regular order, as above.

### THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**77.** The verb **portō** is said to be of the *first conjugation*. The infinitive meaning *to carry* is **portāre.** All verbs which have the infinitive ending **-āre** are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like **portō**. These verbs have as a characteristic element the vowel **ā,** which becomes short before the endings **-t** and **-nt.**

*a.* The verbs **amō, laudō, ambulō, properō, spectō, labōrō,** and **stō,** which appear in this or the preceding lessons, are of the first conjugation. In the vocabularies hereafter the infinitive ending **-āre** will be given after the first form of a new verb of the first conjugation.

*b.* The verb **dō** is of the first conjugation, but it is irregular in that it has the vowel **a** short where it would be long in **portō** and other verbs of the first conjugation, except in a very few forms. The infinitive is **dare.**

### PERSONAL ENDINGS

**78.** With a verb denoting an act done by the subject the following are the personal endings which are used to show person and number, together with their meanings.

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **-ō,** *I* | **-mus,** *we* |
| **-s,** *you* (singular) | **-tis,** *you* (plural) |
| **-t,** *he, she, it* | **-nt,** *they* |

### READING EXERCISE

**79.** 1. Schola nostra est schola bona. Scholam nostram laudāmus et amāmus.

---

### THE INFINITIVE

(21) A verb form preceded by *to* is often used to refer to an act without saying that it really took place. The expressions *to walk, to have heard, to be seen,* are of this kind. These forms of the verb with *to* are called *infinitives.*

Scholam laudātis, sed in scholā nōn bene labōrātis. Soror mea scholam laudat et in scholā bene labōrat. Soror mea est puella impigra.

2. Cūr hīc stātis?

Hīc stāmus quod fīliam tuam expectāmus. Ubi fīlia tua est?

Fīlia mea nunc in scholā est.

3. Vesperī saepe in viīs ambulō. Amīcī quoque ibi ambulant. Amīcōs saepe videō cum in viīs ambulō. Nautae saepe vesperī in viīs ambulant. Ibi nautās vidēmus.

4. Jānua est aperta, et Cornēliam in casā videō. Cornēlia agricolam expectat. Agricola epistulam portat. Agricola epistulam Cornēliae dat.

## 80. VOCABULARY

**cum,** when
**hīc,** here
**impigra,** energetic, industrious
**jānua, -ae,** F., door
**labōrō, -āre,** work
**portō, -āre,** carry
**stō, stāre,** stand
**ubi,** where, when
**vesperī,** in the evening

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**81.** 1. Puellae saepe in viīs vesperī ambula—. 2. Cūr agricola ex silv— propera—? 3. Epistulās tuās nunc expectā— (*subject "we"*). 4. Cūr māter mea mihi dōnum nōn da—? 5. Māter tua tibi dōnum nōn da— quod nōn bene labōrā— (*subject "you" singular*).

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**82.** 1. What do you suppose was originally the duty of a *porter?* 2. What connection in meaning can you see between **stō** and *station?* 3. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?

SUGGESTED DRILL

Give English meanings for the following:

1. Ambulāmus; properāmus. 2. Spectō; spectat; spectāmus. 3. Labōrās; spectās. 4. Amāre; stāre; spectāre. 5. Properant; properās; properō. 6. Labōrat; labōrātis; labōrant. 7. Sunt; stant; sum, stō. 8. Ambulātis; ambulat; ambulāre. 9. Dō; dat; dant.

## LESSON XIII

### SECOND DECLENSION

#### DECLENSION OF *TEMPLUM*

**83.** The different case forms of the noun **templum,** *a temple,* are as follows:

*Singular*

| | |
|---|---|
| NOM. | templum, *a temple* (as subject) |
| GEN. | templī, *of a temple* |
| DAT. | templō, *to a temple, temple* (as indirect object) |
| ACC. | templum, *a temple* (as direct object) |
| ABL. | templō, (*from, with, in*) *a temple* |

*Plural*

| | |
|---|---|
| NOM. | templa, *temples* (as subject) |
| GEN. | templōrum, *of temples* |
| DAT. | templīs, *to temples, temples* (as indirect object) |
| ACC. | templa, *temples* (as direct object) |
| ABL. | templīs (*from, with, in*) *temples* |

*a.* To *decline* a noun (or adjective) means to give its different case forms in regular order.

#### THE SECOND DECLENSION

**84.** Nouns with the genitive singular ending in **-ī** are of the second declension. The second declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in **-um,** others in **-us,** and others in **-er.** Those ending in **-um** are declined like **templum.**

### GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

**85.** Most first declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, **agricola, incola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

### GENDER OF NOUNS IN *-UM*

**86.** All nouns ending in **-um** in the nominative singular are of the neuter gender.

### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

**87.** The adjectives which have been given with the ending **-a** have also a neuter form in **-um,** declined like **templum.**

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender as well as in case and number. Thus we say **parva puella,** *a small girl,* but **parvum templum,** *a small temple.*

### READING EXERCISE

**88.** 1. Tēctum in magnō oppidō habeō, sed oppidum nōn amō. Māter mea casam in silvā habet, et aestāte in casā habitō. Soror mea quoque in casā aestāte habitat.

2. Tēctum tuum in oppidō saepe videō. Tēctum magnum est sed nōn pulchrum. Casa in silvā est pulchra.

---

### GENDER

(22) We use the pronoun *he* when we are referring to a man or boy or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when we are referring to a woman or girl or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when we are referring to something without sex. Thus when we are speaking of a boy we may say *He is a stranger,* when speaking of a girl we may say *She is not at home,* and when speaking of a book we say *It is mine.* This distinction in pronouns is called *gender.*

Such words as *he* are in the *masculine* gender, such words as *she* are in the *feminine* gender, and such words as *it* are in the *neuter* gender.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

*a.* A word like *friend* which may refer to either a man or a woman is sometimes said to be in the *common* gender.

3. Poēta magnum tabernāculum in īnsulā habet. Ex casā nostrā tabernāculum poētae vidēmus. Poēta est amīcus agricolae. Tēctum agricolae quoque in īnsulā est. Agricolam et poētam saepe vidēmus cum in īnsulā sumus.

4. Oppida patriae nostrae laudās. Soror tua oppida Italiae saepe laudat, sed in oppidīs Italiae nōn diū manet. Nunc in parvō oppidō Hispāniae est. Multa oppida Hispāniae et Italiae sunt pulchra.

5. Quid (*direct object*) māter tua tibi dat? Māter mea mihi praemium dat, quod ex viā properō. Soror mea quoque praemium habet, quod impigra est.

### 89. VOCABULARY

**aestāte,** in summer
**diū,** long, for a long time
**habeō,** I have
**habitō, -āre,** live
**manet,** remains
**oppidum, -ī,** N., town
**praemium, -ī,** N., reward
**quid,** what?
**tabernāculum, -ī,** N., tent
**tēctum, -ī,** N., house

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**90.** 1. Magn— oppid— (*town*) nōn laudās. 2. Oppid— (*the towns*) Italiae saepe laudāmus. 3. Tabernācul— (*a tent*) in silvā videō. 4. Cornēlia mihi magn— praemi— (*reward*) dat. 5. Soror mea in oppid— (*the town*) aestāte nōn manet.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**91.** 1. What is a *habitation?* 2. What was the original meaning of *tabernacle?* 3. What is a *premium?*

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **parvum oppidum.** 2. Decline together **dōnum meum.** 3. Name the case of each noun in the sentences of paragraph 3, section **88.**

## LESSON XIV

### SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

#### DECLENSION OF *AMĪCUS*

**92.** The noun **amīcus** is of the second declension, and is declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | amīcus, *a friend* (as subject) | amīcī, *friends* (as subject) |
| Gen. | amīcī, *of a friend* | amīcōrum, *of friends* |
| Dat. | amīcō, *to a friend, a friend* (as indirect object) | amīcīs, *to friends, friends* (as indirect object) |
| Acc. | amīcum, *a friend* (as direct object) | amīcōs, *friends* (as direct object) |
| Abl. | amīcō (*from, with, in*) *a friend* | amīcīs (*from, with, in*) *friends* |

*a.* Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are chiefly masculine.

#### ADJECTIVES IN *-US*

**93.** Such adjectives as **bona** and **magna** have a masculine form ending in **-us** in the nominative, with the other case endings like those of the noun **amīcus.**

#### READING EXERCISE: *FĪLIUS ET FĪLIA AGRICOLAE*

**94.** 1. Agricola fīlium et fīliam habet. Fīlius agricolae domī manet, sed fīlia in scholā hieme est, et tum in oppidō cum amīcō benignō agricolae habitat. Agricola oppidum nōn amat, et fīliam hieme nōn saepe videt. Aestāte puella domī manet. Agricola equōs habet, et fīliae equum bonum dat. Fīlia equōs nōn timet, et laeta est quod equum bonum habet.

Māter puellae laeta est cum fīlia domī est. Fīlius agricolae nūllōs amīcōs in oppidō habet.

2. Tēctum amīcī agricolae in nostrō oppidō est. Ex fenestrā meā tēctum amīcī agricolae videō. Ibi fīlia agricolae hieme habitat. Amīcus agricolae parvum fīlium habet, sed nūllās fīliās habet.

**95.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **domī,** at home | **nūllus,** no, none |
| **equus, -ī,** M., horse | **timet,** fears |
| **fīlius,**[1] **-ī,** M., son | **tum,** then |
| **hieme,** in winter | **videt,** sees |

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**96.** 1. Amīcus meus equ— (*horse*) bon— habet. 2. Fīli— (*the son*) nautae poēta est. 3. Fīli— (*the son*) nautae epistulam dō. 4. Cornēlia fīli— (*a daughter*) habet, sed nūll— fīli— (*sons*) habet. 5. Casa amīc— poētae in oppid— est.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**97.** 1. What is an *equestrian* statue? 2. From a consideration of **fīlius** and **fīlia,** what do you think is meant by *filial* respect? 3. What is the meaning of *nullify?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the nominative singular and plural of all the first and second declension nouns in paragraph 1, section **94.** 2. Give the accusative singular and plural of all the first and second declension nouns in paragraph 2, section **94.** 3. Decline **equus.**

[1] The genitive of this word is commonly **fīlī** (contracted from **fīliī**). The uncontracted form, however, is used in the exercises of this book.

AN OLD VIEW OF THE ROMAN FORUM

## LESSON XV

### SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

#### DECLENSION OF *PUER* AND *AGER*

**98.** The nouns **puer,** *boy,* and **ager,** *field,* of the second declension, are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | puer | puerī | ager | agrī |
| GEN. | puerī | puerōrum | agrī | agrōrum |
| DAT. | puerō | puerīs | agrō | agrīs |
| ACC. | puerum | puerōs | agrum | agrōs |
| ABL. | puerō | puerīs | agrō | agrīs |

#### TWO CLASSES OF NOUNS IN *-ER*

**99.** The two classes of second declension nouns represented by **puer** and **ager** differ only in the fact that nouns like **puer** keep the **e** before **r** in all the cases, while in **ager** and similar nouns **e** appears before **r** only in the nominative singular. When a new word appears in the vocabulary the genitive, or a part of it, is printed after the nominative to show whether it is declined like **puer** or **ager.**

#### READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM* (*A Dialogue*)

**100.**

1. Quid facit puer?
   Puer librum legit.
2. Quis est puer?
   Puer est fīlius poētae.
3. Quid discit puer in scholā?
   Puer in scholā linguam Latīnam discit.
4. Quid facit puer cum in scholā nōn est?
   Puer labōrat in agrīs cum in scholā nōn est.
5. Quid facit puella?
   Puella epistulam scrībit.
6. Cūr puellam nōn laudās?

Puellam nōn laudō quod nōn est impigra.

7. Quid portat soror tua?
   Soror mea līlia portat.
8. Cūr Sextus nōn habet pecūniam?
   Sextus nōn habet pecūniam quod nōn labōrat.
9. Quid fēmina puerō dat?
   Fēmina puerō librum dat.
10. Quid puella in agrō agricolae videt?
    Puella in agrō agricolae equum videt.

**101.** VOCABULARY

**ager, agrī,** M., field
**discit,** learns
**facit,** does makes
**fēmina, -ae,** F., woman
**liber, lībrī,** M., book
**līlium, -ī,** N., lily
**puer, puerī,** M., boy
**quis,** who?
**Sextus, -ī,** M., Sextus (*the name of a man or boy*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**102.** 1. Puer libr— (*a book*) legit. 2. Sextus in agr— (*the field*) cum agricol— (*the farmer*) labōrat. 3. Cūr puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudās? 4. Puer - (*the boys*) nōn laudō quod nōn labōr— (*subject "they"*). 5. Puer— (*the boys*) praemium nōn dō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**103.** 1. What grammatical term is connected in derivation with **fēmina?** 2. Find two nouns derived from **liber.** 3. The plural form **puerī** sometimes means "children." What is a *puerile* objection?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline **liber.** 2. Make the direct objects plural in the answers to questions 1, 5, and 10 of section **100.** 3. Make the direct and indirect objects plural in the answer to 9.

## LESSON XVI

### SECOND DECLENSION: (Continued)

**104.** SUMMARY OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

*Singular*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | templum | amīcus | ager | puer |
| GEN. | templī | amīcī | agrī | puerī |
| DAT. | templō | amīcō | agrō | puerō |
| ACC. | templum | amīcum | agrum | puerum |
| ABL. | templō | amīcō | agrō | puerō |

*Plural*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | templa | amīcī | agrī | puerī |
| GEN. | templōrum | amīcōrum | agrōrum | puerōrum |
| DAT. | templīs | amīcīs | agrīs | puerīs |
| ACC. | templa | amīcōs | agrōs | puerōs |
| ABL. | templīs | amīcīs | agrīs | puerīs |

*a.* The noun **vir** (genitive **virī**) also belongs to this declension. The endings of the genitive, dative, accusative, etc., are added to the nominative as in **puer.**

#### THE VOCATIVE

**105.** In addition to the cases which have been given, there is another case called the *vocative,* which is used to denote the person addressed. Thus, in the sentences "John, come here," and "Boy, what street is this?" the words *John* and *boy* are in the vocative case.

The vocative has the same form as the nominative in all Latin nouns except those of the second declension ending in **-us.** The vocative singular of these nouns ends in **-e.** Thus, the vocative singular of **amīcus** is **amīce,** the vocative of **Mārcus** is **Mārce.** The vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

### SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT FACTS REGARDING THE SECOND DECLENSION

**106.** (1) The genitive singular ends in **-ī.**

(2) Nouns ending in **-us** and **-er** are chiefly masculine.

(3) Nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.

(4) The nominative plural of masculine nouns ends in **-ī.**

(5) The nominative and accusative plural of all neuter nouns (in all declensions) end in **-a.**

### READING EXERCISE

**107.** 1. Mārcus, amīcus meus, agricola est, et multōs equōs habet. Mārcus equīs hieme multum frūmentum dat. Equī magnī et validī sunt. Aestāte equī interdum in agrīs sunt, et tum frūmentum nōn edunt. Sed frūmentum equīs damus cum labōrant.

2. Puerum in agrō cum agricolā vidēmus. Puer fīlius agricolae est. Agricola fīliam quoque habet. Fīlia hodiē in hortō labōrat. Sed fīlia nōn est sōla in hortō. Māter puellae quoque in hortō est.

3. Cūr, Sexte, sōlus in viā ambulās?
Sōlus in viā ambulō quod amīcī meī hodiē in agrīs labōrant.
Cūr in agrīs cum amīcīs tuīs nōn labōrās?
In agrīs nōn labōrō quod nōn validus sum.

### 108. VOCABULARY

**edunt,** they eat
**frūmentum, -ī,** N., grain
**hodiē,** today
**hortus, -ī,** M., garden
**Mārcus, -ī,** M., Marcus (*the name of a man or boy*)
**multī,** many
**sōlus,** alone
**validus,** strong, well

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**109.** Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. The boy is the son of my friend.

2. I often praise the boy, but I do not praise the boy's friend.

3. We see the farmer's fields from the window of the cottage.

4. The boys are now in the garden with your daughter.

5. My friend's horse stands in the street.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**110.** 1. What is *horticulture?* 2. Give two English words connected in derivation with **sōlus.** 3. What is a *valid* reason? 4. What connection in meaning do you see between **validus** and *invalid?* 5. What are *edible* berries?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Make a list of the neuter nouns in this lesson and the three preceding lessons, and give the nominative plural of each. 2. Give the nominative plural of the masculine nouns in this lesson and the two preceding lessons. 3. Decline **hortus tuus.**

---

## LESSON XVII

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**111.** DECLENSION OF *BONUS* IN ALL GENDERS

The adjective **bonus** is declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
| NOM. | bonus | bona | bonum |
| GEN. | bonī | bonae | bonī |
| DAT. | bonō | bonae | bonō |
| ACC. | bonum | bonam | bonum |
| ABL. | bonō | bonā | bonō |

| | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | bonī | bonae | bona |
| GEN. | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| DAT. | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |
| ACC. | bonōs | bonās | bona |
| ABL. | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |

*a.* The following adjectives, which have previously been given in the feminine, are declined like **bonus**:

**magnus, parvus, longus, multus, perīculōsus, benignus, cārus, grātus, laetus, Latīnus, clārus, obscūrus, validus.**[1]

### ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

**112.** An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since **agricola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine, any adjective modifying one of them will be masculine.

The words for *a good sailor* are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| NOM. | nauta bonus | nautae bonī |
| GEN. | nautae bonī | nautārum bonōrum |
| DAT. | nautae bonō | nautīs bonīs |
| ACC. | nautam bonum | nautās bonōs |
| ABL. | nautā bonō | nautīs bonīs |

### SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

**113.** The masculine form of some adjectives may be used in the plural without a noun to denote persons. Thus, **multī** means *many (persons)*, **bonī** means *the good (persons)*. In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to refer to things. Thus, **multa** means *many things*.

[1] The adjectives **sōlus** and **nūllus** are like **bonus** except in the genitive and dative singular.

### READING EXERCISE

**114.** 1. Sextus bonus agricola est, et multum frūmentum habet. Magnum tēctum et parvum hortum habet. In hortō cum fīliā et fīliō nunc stat. Vesperī saepe in viīs cum amīcīs ambulat. Multī Sextum amant quod benignus est.

2. Fīlius Sextī in magnō bellō pugnat, et gladium et scūtum habet. Pūblius quoque, amīcus Sextī, in bellō pugnat.

3. Librōs multōrum poētārum laudō, sed librōs tuōs nōn laudō. Poēta bonus nōn es. Fāma tua nōn magna est.

4. Nauta sōlus in viā stat. Amīcum expectat. Sed amīcus in tēctō tuō manet. Nautam nōn videt.

5. Nunc amīcus ex tēctō properat. Nauta laetus est quod amīcum videt. Nauta et amīcus nōn diū in viā ambulant, quod amīcus dēfessus est.

6. Cūr, amīce, ex tēctō properās? Ex tēctō properō quod nautam in viā videō.

7. Amīcus tuus sum, sed cōnsilium tuum nōn laudō. Nōn est cōnsilium bonum. Pūblius habet cōnsilium bonum.

### VOCABULARY

**115.**

**bellum, -ī,** N., war
**cōnsilium, -ī,** N., plan
**dēfessus, -a, -um,** tired out, tired
**gladius, -ī,** M., sword
**Pūblius, -ī,** M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*)
**scūtum, -ī,** N., shield

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**116.** 1. Sextus magn— equ— (*horses*) habet. 2. Tēctum me— est magn—, casa tu— est parv—. 3. Amīcōs benign— habeō. 4. Puerī in silvā sunt sōl—. 5. Nauta est valid—, sed fīlius naut— nōn est valid—.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**117.** 1. What is a *belligerent* attitude? 2. What is the meaning of the expression "*ante bellum* days" (referring to the

American Civil War)? 3. What was the original meaning of *gladiator?* 4. Find the meaning of the name of the flower, *gladiolus.*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Rewrite the first sentences in paragraphs 4 and 5 of section **114,** changing the subjects to the plural. 2. Decline **meus** and **tuus** in all genders and both numbers.

## LESSON XVIII

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Continued)

#### ADJECTIVES WITH THE MASCULINE IN *-ER*

**118.** There are certain adjectives which end in **-er** instead of **-us** in the nominative singular of the masculine. These are of two classes, with the same difference which has been seen in nouns ending in **-er.**

| | | *Singular* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
| Nom. | miser | misera | miserum |
| Gen. | miserī | miserae | miserī |
| Dat. | miserō | miserae | miserō |
| Acc. | miserum | miseram | miserum |
| Abl. | miserō | miserā | miserō |
| | | *Plural* | |
| Nom. | miserī | miserae | misera |
| Gen. | miserōrum | miserārum | miserōrum |
| Dat. | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |
| Acc. | miserōs | miserās | misera |
| Abl. | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
| Nom. | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| Gen. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchrī |
| Dat. | pulchrō | pulchrae | pulchrō |
| Acc. | pulchrum | pulchram | pulchrum |
| Abl. | pulchrō | pulchrā | pulchrō |

| | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchra |
| Gen. | pulchrōrum | pulchrārum | pulchrōrum |
| Dat. | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |
| Acc. | pulchrōs | pulchrās | pulchra |
| Abl. | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |

### REVIEW LIST OF ADJECTIVES

**119.** The following adjectives have previously been seen in the feminine form. The nominative in all three genders is here given.

apertus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um
bonus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um
laetus, -a, -um
Latīnus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
meus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
obscūrus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um
perīculōsus, -a, -um
tuus, -a, -um
aeger, -gra, -grum
impiger, -gra, -grum
miser, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum
pulcher, -chra, chrum

*a.* The adjectives **aeger, aegra, aegrum,** *ill, sick,* **impiger, -gra, -grum,** *energetic,* **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our,* and **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your,* are declined like **pulcher.**

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

**120.** As has been said before, the words for *my* (*mine*), *your* (*yours*), *our* (*ours*), are adjectives in Latin, and hence they must agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns denoting the thing possessed. The word for *your*, *yours*, when denoting possession by more than one person, is **vester, -tra, -trum.** It will appear later in the reading exercises.

### READING EXERCISE

**121.** 1. Amīcus meus multōs librōs habet. Librōs amat. Fīlius amīcī meī librōs nōn amat. Sed puer bonus est, et bene labōrat. Validus et impiger est. Equōs bonōs amat et laetus est cum in agrīs labōrat.

2. Māter tua parvum hortum habet. In hortō sunt rosae et līlia. Māter tua mihi saepe rosās dat. Soror mea līlia et rosās amat, et in hortō cum fīliā amīcī meī interdum ambulat. Ex fenestrā tēctī nostrī hortum vidēmus.

3. Hortus Mārcī est pulcher, et ibi cum Mārcō saepe ambulō. Mārcus est amīcus meus. Sed hodiē in hortō sōlus ambulō quod Mārcus est aeger. Miser sum quod amīcus meus est aeger.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**122.** 1. Sextus equōs me— laudat. 2. Bellum long— expectāmus. 3. Fīlia tu – est puella bon—. 4. Īnsula est parv— sed pulchr—. 5. Nautae sunt valid—.

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together the words for *an unhappy friend*. 2. Decline together the words for *a beautiful garden*. 3. Give the Latin for the following phrases as subjects and as direct objects: *an unhappy sailor, a sick friend, a strong boy*. 4. Decline **impiger,** *energetic*, using **pulcher** as a model.

# LESSON XIX

## PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

**123.** The verb **portō** is conjugated as follows in the present indicative passive.

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portor, *I am carried* | portāmur, *we are carried* |
| portāris,[1] *you are carried* | portāminī, *you are carried* |
| portātur, *he, she, it is carried* | portantur, *they are carried* |

*a.* These forms may also be translated: *I am being carried, you are being carried, he is being carried,* etc.

*b.* A verb which represents an action or state as a fact is said to be in the *indicative mood.*

### PERSONAL ENDINGS

**124.** The personal endings used in the passive are as follows:

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **-or (-r),** *I* | **-mur,** *we* |
| **-ris,** *you* | **-minī,** *you* |
| **-tur,** *he, she, it* | **-ntur,** *they* |

*a.* The characteristic vowel **-ā-** becomes short before **-ntur,** and it disappears before **-or.**

---

### VOICE

(23) The two sentences *The boy helps his friend* and *The boy is helped by his friend* both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we say something about the boy. But in the first sentence the subject does the act, while in the second the act is done by someone else. A verb which denotes an act done by the subject is said to be in the *active voice*, and a verb which denotes an act which is done to the subject by some other person or thing is said to be in the *passive voice.*

[1] There is also a form of the second person singular ending in **-re.** It is not used in the exercises of this book.

### READING EXERCISE

**125.** 1. Pūblius est vir bonus, et ab amīcis amātur et laudātur. Fīlium habet, sed fīlius nōn laudātur, quod impiger nōn est et male labōrat. Pūblius est miser quod fīlius nōn est impiger.

2. In tēctō tuō galeam et scūtum videō. Gladium quoque videō. Haec sunt arma Rōmāna. Nunc galeās et gladiōs in bellō vidēmus, sed scūta nōn vidēmus.

3. Oppidum nostrum viās lātās habet. In viīs multōs puerōs et puellās vidēmus. Puerī et puellae ad scholam properant.

4. Cūr nūllōs librōs hodiē portās? Librī meī hodiē ab amīcō meō portantur. Saepe librōs amīcī meī portō.

5. Ex oppidō nostrō castra vidēmus. Castra magna sunt. Amīcus meus nunc in castrīs est.

### 126. VOCABULARY

**ā, ab,** *preposition with ablative*, by, from

**arma, -ōrum,** N. *pl.*, weapons, arms

**castra, -ōrum,** N. *pl.*, camp

**galea, -ae,** F., helmet

**lātus, -a, -um,** wide, broad

**male,** badly

**Rōmānus, -a, -um,** Roman

**vir, virī,** M., man

*a.* The word **castra** is used in the plural number with singular meaning. When it is the subject of a verb the verb must be plural, although translated by an English verb in the singular. When more than one camp is meant the same form is used as for one, but the rest of the sentence will make clear the fact that the meaning is plural. An adjective modifying **castra** must be plural.

*b.* In a sentence with a passive verb **ā** or **ab** commonly means *by*. Sometimes, however, this preposition is translated *from*. The distinction between **ē** or **ex** and **ā** or **ab** meaning *from* is that **ē** or **ex** is used to de-

note place *from within which*, while **ā** or **ab** means *from near*, or does not indicate that the starting point is within the place named. Thus, *They set out from the town* means that they were in the town when they started, and therefore **ē** or **ex** will be used. In the sentence *We walked from the river to the hill, from* means *from near* or *from the side of*, and hence **ā** or **ab** will be used.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

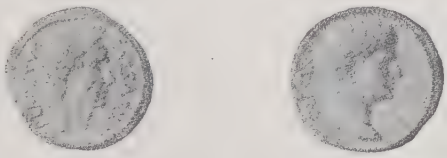
**127.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The small boy reads many books. 2. Marcus is unhappy today. 3. The field is large, but the garden is small. 4. Your horse is beautiful, but he is not strong. 5. There are many roses in my garden.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**128.** 1. Find some English words in which the first syllable appears to come from **ā** or **ab**. Look up the derivation of these words in the dictionary. 2. What is an *armory?* 3. What sort of person is a *malefactor?* 4. What are *virile* qualities?

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the meaning of the following: 1. Laudātur, laudantur, laudāmur. 2. Amāmus, amāmur, amās, amāris. 3. Portat, portant, portātur, portantur. 4. Spectō, spector, spectāre, properāre.



ROMAN COINS

## SECOND REVIEW LESSON

**129.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XI–XIX

ager, agrī
arma, -ōrum
bellum, -ī
equus, -ī
fēmina, -ae
fīlius, -ī
frūmentum, -ī
galea, -ae
gladius, -ī
hortus, -ī
jānua, -ae
liber, librī
līlium, -ī
lūna, -ae
oppidum, -ī
praemium, -ī
puer, puerī
scūtum, -ī
stella, -ae
tabernāculum, -ī
tēctum, -ī

vir, virī
aestāte
domī
hieme
vesperī
aeger
clārus
lātus
miser
multus
multī
nūllus
obscūrus
sōlus
quis
quid
habitō, -āre
habeō
labōrō, -āre

portō, -āre
spectō, -āre
stō, stāre
discit
facit
manet
timet
videt
diū
hodiē
interdum
male
noctū
quod
tum
ubi
ā, ab

### WORD STUDY: LATIN *AE*, *OE*, AND ENGLISH *E*

**130.** In the previous lesson on word study (page 26) we saw certain changes in the spelling of some Latin words which have been brought into English. Another change, which is to be found in a rather large number of words, is illustrated by the word *premium*, from Latin **praemium.** The diphthong **ae** of the Latin word is represented by the letter *e* in the English derivative. In like manner *equal* is from Latin **aequālis,** which has about the same meaning as *equal*, and

which in turn comes from another Latin word **aequus,** meaning *level, equal,* or *fair.*

Similarly the Latin diphthong **oe** becomes *e* in English derivatives. From Latin **poena,** *punishment,* we have *penalty, penal.* Latin **poenitēre** (also spelled **paenitēre**), *to repent,* is of common origin with **poena** and is the source of *penitent* and *penitentiary.* The word *federation* is connected with a Latin word **foederātus,** meaning *bound together by a treaty* (**foedus,** *a treaty*).

#### WORDS FORMED WITH *EX*

**131.** Another change is seen in the combination of **ex** with words beginning with **s,** as for example **ex+spectō.** In the Latin word **expectō,** as given in this book, **s** is dropped, as in the English word *expect.* In like manner *exist* and *exile* come from compounds of **ex** with words beginning with **s,** in which **s** has been dropped. In the Latin of the time of Caesar and Cicero **s** was retained in these words (**exspectō, exsistō**), but at a later time the spelling without **s** developed. Some Latin textbooks employ the form with **s.**

---

## LESSON XX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *HIC*

**132.** The demonstrative **hic,** *this* (plural *these*), is declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | hic | haec | hoc | hī | hae | haec |
| GEN. | hujus | hujus | hujus | hōrum | hārum | hōrum |
| DAT. | huic | huic | huic | hīs | hīs | hīs |
| ACC. | hunc | hanc | hoc | hōs | hās | haec |
| ABL. | hōc | hāc | hōc | hīs | hīs | hīs |

READING EXERCISE: *TRĒS PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ*

**133.** 1. Hic puer est Mārcus. Ā dextrā stat Sextus, ā sinistrā stat Pūblius. Hī trēs sunt puerī Rōmānī. Arma quoque Rōmāna vidēmus. Mārcus gladium et scūtum habet. Sextus jaculum et sagittās portat. Pūblius est parvus, et arma nōn habet. Mārcus et Sextus et Pūblius sunt fīliī Titī. Titus est sagittārius, et nunc in Hispāniā est. Rōmānī cum incolīs Hispāniae pugnant.

2. (*Marcus speaks.*) Mārcus sum. Hic puer parvus est Pūblius. Pūblius gladium nōn habet quod parvus est. Puer tertius est Sextus. Sextus est magnus puer et arma portat. Fīliī Titī sumus.

3. (*Publius speaks.*) Pūblius sum. Arma nōn habeō quod parvus sum. Sextus et Mārcus sunt puerī magnī et arma habent. Arma amant et bellum laudant, sed nōn in bellō pugnant. Māter mea bellum nōn laudat.

**134.** VOCABULARY

**dextra, -ae,** F., right hand;
ā **dextrā,** on the right
**hic, haec, hoc,** this
**jaculum, -ī,** N., javelin
**pugnō, -āre,** fight
**sagitta, -ae,** F., arrow
**sagittārius, -ī,** M., archer
**sinistra, -ae,** F., left hand,
ā **sinistrā,** on the left
**tertius, -a, -um,** third
**Titus, -ī,** M., Titus (*name of a man or boy*)
**trēs,** three

ROMAN JAVELINS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**135.** Write in Latin: 1. This boy and this girl are in our school. 2. A friend of this boy is now in our town. 3. I often give this boy money. 4. (There) are no roses in this garden. 5. This farmer is a strong man.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**136.** 1. What is *dexterity*? 2. What is a *pugnacious* disposition? 3. What is a *sinister* appearance?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1 Give the Latin for the following as subjects: *these boys, these girls, these dangers, these sailors.* 2. Give the Latin for the following as objects: *these fields, these cottages, these farmers.* 3. Give the Latin for the following phrases: *in this field, in these fields, to this boy, to these boys, from these cottages.*

# LESSON XXI

## PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

### CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

**137.** The prepositions **cum, ex,** and **in,** as has been seen, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. The accusative, therefore, in addition to being the case of the object of a verb, is also found with certain prepositions.

When a new preposition is given in the vocabulary, the case with which it is used will be indicated. Thus **ante,** *prep. with acc.*, means that **ante** is a preposition which takes the accusative. The number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number taking the ablative.

### PHRASES WITH *TO*

**138.** We have seen that an English phrase with *to* is translated by the dative case if it is equivalent to an indirect object or if it depends on an adjective similar in meaning to those given in section **48.** In such phrases the English word *to* is represented by the case ending of the Latin word. But phrases with *to* which denote the place to which a person or thing moves are expressed by the preposition **ad** followed by the accusative case of the word denoting the place to or toward which the motion is directed.

### READING EXERCISE: *SCHOLA MEA ET AMĪCĪ MEĪ*

**139.** 1. Māne ad scholam properō. Multī virī tum per viās properant. Ante scholam nostram est magnum aedificium. In hōc aedificiō multī virī labōrant. Amīcus meus, Pūblius, ibi aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Post hoc aedificium est via lāta. Trāns hanc viam est parva casa, et amīcus meus in hāc casā habitat.

2. Vesperī post hōrās scholae cum amīcīs meīs saepe ambulō.

Interdum amīcōs ad tēctum nostrum invītō. Saepe ad tēcta amīcōrum invītor. Multōs amīcōs habeō.

3. Māne puerī et puellae ad scholam properant. Haec schola est ante magnum aedificium. Ibi labōrō. Fīlius amīcī meī in hōc aedificiō aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Vesperī post hōrās scholae fīlius amīcī in viā ambulat. Multī puerī tum in viīs ambulant. Interdum fīlius amīcī ad tēctum meum invītātur. Multōs amīcōs habet.

### 140. VOCABULARY

**ad,** *prep. with acc.*, to, toward
**aedificium, -ī,** N., building
**ante,** *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of
**hōra, -ae,** F., hour
**invītō, -āre,** invite
**māne,** in the morning
**per,** *prep. with acc.*, through
**post,** *prep. with acc.*, behind, after
**trāns,** *prep. with acc.*, across

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**141.** 1. Puella ad cas— (*the cottages*) properat. 2. Cum amīcō per silv — (*forest*) ambulāmus. 3. Tabernāculum est in silvā post oppid— (*town*). 4. Est magnum aedificium trāns vi—(*the street*). 5. Amīcī meī saepe ad tēct— tu— (*your house*) invītantur.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**142.** 1. What is an *edifice?* 2. Find the origin of the abbreviations *a. m.* and *p. m.* 3. What is a *transcontinental* railroad? 4. What is an *ante-room?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases: *Behind the forest, in the forest, through the forest, from the forest.* 2. Tell which of the phrases with *to* in the following sentences will be translated by **ad** with the accusative and which by the dative case alone: (*a*) I gave the letter to the boy. (*b*) He is walking to the town. (*c*) We hurried to the window. (*d*) The report was not pleasing to your father. 3. Decline together the words for *this hour.*

# LESSON XXII

## SECOND CONJUGATION

### CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

**143.** The verb **monet,** *he warns*, differs from **portat,** *he carries*, in that it has **e** instead of **a** before the ending **-t.** Similarly **monēmus,** *we warn*, differs from **portāmus,** *we carry*, and **monētur,** *he is warned*, differs from **portātur,** *he is carried*.

This verb belongs to the *second conjugation* The infinitive, meaning *to warn*, is **monēre.** All verbs which have the present active infinitive ending in **-ēre** are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like **moneō.** The present indicative of **moneō** is as follows:

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

**144.**

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Singular* |
| moneō, *I warn, am warning* | moneor, *I am warned* |
| monēs, *you warn*, etc. | monēris, *you are warned* |
| monet, *he, she, it warns*, etc. | monētur, *he, she, it is warned* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| monēmus, *we warn* | monēmur, *we are warned* |
| monētis, *you warn* | monēminī, *you are warned* |
| monent, *they warn* | monentur, *they are warned* |

*a.* The personal endings are the same as in the forms of **portō.**

### READING EXERCISE: *PERĪCULUM SOCIŌRUM NOSTRŌRUM*

**145.** 1. Socii nostrī magnō in perīculō sunt quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent. Saepe monentur, sed nōn timent. Sī auxilium nostrum expectant, parātī esse dēbent. Magnās cōpiās habēre dēbent. Perículum nōn vident, sed perīculum magnum est.

2. Cūr sociī nostrī monentur?
   Sociī nostrī monentur quod in perīculō sunt.
3. Cūr sociī in perīculō sunt?
   Sociī in perīculō sunt quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent.
4. Quid sociī expectant?
   Sociī auxilium nostrum expectant.
5. Quid sociī habēre dēbent?
   Sociī magnās cōpiās habēre dēbent.
6. Cūr sociī satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent?
   Sociī satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent quod perīculum nōn vident.
7. Cūr sociōs habēre dēbēmus?
   Sociōs habēre dēbēmus quod patria nostra interdum in perīculō est.

146. VOCABULARY

**auxilium, -ī,** N., assistance, help
**cōpia, -ae,** F., plenty; *plural,* **cōpiae, -ārum,** troops, forces
**dēbeō, -ēre,** owe, ought
**moneō, -ēre,** warn
**parātus, -a, -um,** ready, prepared
**perīculum, -ī,** N., danger, peril
**satis,** *adv.*, enough
**sī,** *conj.*, if
**socius, -ī,** M., ally
**timeō, -ēre,** fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**147.** Write in Latin: 1. We are sometimes warned by our friends. 2. You (*singular*) ought to have your book. 3. War is not feared by our allies. 4. You do not see our house from your window. 5. We do not fear danger, because we are prepared.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**148.** 1. What is an *auxiliary* verb? 2. What is a *copious* supply? 3. Find in a dictionary the origin of the words *debt* and *peril*. 4. What is the original meaning of *monitor*?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **dēbeō, timeō,** and **videō** in the present tense, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for *they see, they praise, he sees, he praises.*

---

## LESSON XXIII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *ILLE*

**149.** The demonstrative **ille,** *that* (plural *those*) is declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| Nom. | ille | illa | illud | illī | illae | illa |
| Gen. | illīus | illīus | illīus | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| Dat. | illī | illī | illī | illīs | illīs | illīs |
| Acc. | illum | illam | illud | illōs | illās | illa |
| Abl. | illō | illā | illō | illīs | illīs | illīs |

### READING EXERCISE

**150.** 1. Ille vir est caecus, sed in viīs sine amīcō saepe ambulat neque perīculum timet. Saepe ad tēctum fīlīī ambulat. Fīlius in tēctō post hortum nostrum habitat.

2. Quam timida illa puella est. Sed nūllum perīculum in hīs locīs est, et puella tūta est.

3. Cūr pecūniam illī puerō iterum dās? Pecūniam iterum illī puerō dō quod epistulās meās portat. Hodiē epistulam ad amīcum tuum portat.

4. Mārcus nōn adest. Ubi est? Cum amīcō in silvā est. Sed Titus et Sextus adsunt. Hī puerī sunt amīcī meī. Mārcus quoque amīcus meus est.

5. Fīlia illīus fēminae nunc in Britanniā est. Fēmina epistulās ad fīliam saepe scrībit. Fīlia quoque epistulās scrībit. Hās epistulās amīcō dat. Amīcus epistulās ad Americam portat.

**151.** VOCABULARY

**adsum, adesse,** be present, be at hand
**caecus, -a, -um,** blind
**ille, illa, illud,** that
**iterum,** *adv.*, again
**locus, -ī,** M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** N.), place
**neque,** *conj.*, nor, and not
**quam,** *adv.*, how, as, than
**sine,** *prep. with abl.*, without
**timidus, -a, -um,** timid
**tūtus, -a, -um,** safe

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**152.** 1. Quis est ill— puer? 2. Cūr ill— puella nūllōs librōs habet? 3. Fīlia ill— virī aegra est. 4. Epistulās saepe ill— puerō dō. 5. Ill— fēmina et ill— vir incolae Hiberniae sunt.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**153.** 1. What is the meaning of *reiterate?* 2. Find an adjective, a noun, and a verb which are connected in derivation with **locus.** 3. What is meant by the statement "The legislature adjourned *sine die*"? 4. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **timidus.**

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases as subjects: *that town, those towns, these towns, that friend, those friends, these friends.* 2. Give the Latin for the following phrases as direct objects: *that forest, those forests, these forests, that field, those fields, these fields.* 3. Decline together the words **illa terra.**

# LESSON XXIV

## IMPERFECT OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

### THE IMPERFECT TENSE

**154.** In the English sentences *I walked* and *I was walking* the verbs *walked* and *was walking* both denote past time. The only difference is that the second represents the act as continuing or in progress in the past, while the first merely indicates that the act was in past time, without any reference to its continuance. Latin has no means of showing the difference between these two expressions. The verb **ambulābam** may mean either *I walked* or *I was walking.*

The Latin tense which corresponds to such verb forms as *walked* and *was walking* is called the *imperfect.*

### THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**155.** The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect active:

*Singular*

portābam, *I was carrying* or *I carried*
portābās, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābat, *he, she, it was carrying, he carried*, etc.

*Plural*

portābāmus, *we were carrying, we carried*
portābātis, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābant, *they were carrying, they carried*

---

### TENSE OF VERBS

(24) When someone says *The boy stands in the street*, we know that the act is going on while we are being told about it; that is, in the present time. If the sentence is *The boy stood in the street*, we know that the act took place at some past time, and similarly the sentence *The boy will stand in the street* shows that the act is going to take place in the future. In these

*Singular*

monēbam, *I was warning* or *I warned*
monēbās, *you were warning, you warned*
monēbat, *he, she, it was warning*, etc.

*Plural*

monēbāmus, *we were warning*, etc.
monēbātis, *you were warning*, etc.
monēbant, *they were warning*, etc.

*a*. The syllable **ba,** which is seen in all the forms of the imperfect, is called the *tense sign* of the imperfect.

### READING EXERCISE

**156.** 1. Gallī auxilium Rōmānōrum postulābant quod Germānī agrōs Galliae vāstābant et oppida occupābant. Gallī prō patriā fortiter pugnābant, sed satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant, et propter perīculum auxilium dēsīderābant.

2. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus quod bellum timēmus. Agrī nostrī vāstantur, et oppida occupantur. Sine sociīs patria nostra nōn tūta est.

3. Bellum nōn dēsīderāmus, sed Rōmānōs nōn timēmus. Patria cāra est, et prō patriā pugnāmus.

---

sentences the form of the verb shows what is the time of the act. The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses*. There are six tenses in English. Their names are *present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect*, and *future perfect*. The following forms of the verb *walk* with the subject *I* show how these tenses are used.

| | |
|---|---|
| Present | I walk |
| Past | I walked |
| Future | I shall walk |
| Present Perfect | I have walked |
| Past Perfect | I had walked |
| Future Perfect | I shall have walked |

4. In bellō agricolae nōn sine perīculō in agrīs labōrant. Tum fēminae et puerī et puellae in oppidīs timent. Bellum fēminīs nōn grātum est.

5. Mārcus in viā cum parvā puellā ambulābat. Puella rosam portābat. Parva puella soror Mārcī est, et saepe cum Mārcō ambulat.

**157.** VOCABULARY

**dēsīderō, -āre,** desire
**fortiter,** *adv.*, bravely
**Gallia, -ae,** F., Gaul (*a country*)
**Gallus, -ī,** M., a Gaul
**Germānus, -ī,** M., a German
**occupō, -āre,** seize
**postulō, -āre,** demand
**prō,** *prep. with abl.*, for, on behalf of, before
**propter,** *prep. with acc.*, on account of
**vāstō, -āre,** lay waste

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**158.** 1. In viā cum amīcīs ambulāba— (*subject "I"*). 2. Bellum nōn timēbā – (*subject "we"*), quod sociōs habēbā— (*subject "we"*). 3. Ille puer librum et epistulam portāba—. 4. Socii nostrī prō patriā fortiter pugnāba –. 5. Auxilium postulābā (*subject "we"*), sed perīculum nōn vidēbā – (*subject "you" singular*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**159.** 1. Find two adjectives ending in *-ic* which are related to **Gallus** and **Germānus.** 2. What is the meaning of *pro-slavery?* 3. What is a *devastated* region?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **occupō** and **timeō** in the imperfect active. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they were carrying, they were warning; he was praising, he was fearing.* 3. Rewrite paragraph 1 of section **156,** changing the verbs to the present tense.

# LESSON XXV

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

### THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

**160.** The Latin word for *who* when used in a question is **quis,** and for *what* similarly used is **quid,** as has already been seen in preceding vocabularies. The genitive, meaning *whose, of whom,* or *of what* is **cujus** in the singular and **quōrum** or **quārum** in the plural. *Whom* is **quem** (or **quam**) in the singular and **quōs** (or **quās**) in the plural. These are forms of the *interrogative pronoun.*

### THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

**161.** In the phrases *what man, which book, what woman,* the forms *what* and *which* are attached to nouns, just as adjectives are. When thus used they are called *interrogative adjectives.*

### THE FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

**162.** The forms of the interrogative pronoun and adjective are the same for most cases in Latin, but there are some forms of the adjective which are not used as pronouns.

*Singular*

| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | quis (quī) | quae | quid (quod) | *who, which, what* |
| Gen. | cujus | cujus | cujus | *whose, of whom, of what* |
| Dat. | cui | cui | cui | *to whom, whom* (as indirect object) |
| Acc. | quem | quam | quid (quod) | *whom, which, what* |
| Abl. | quō | quā | quō | *(from, by) whom, etc.* |

| | | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | quī | quae | quae | *who, which, what* |
| Gen. | quōrum | quārum | quōrum | *whose, of whom, of what* |
| Dat. | quibus | quibus | quibus | *to whom, to what, whom, what* (as indirect object) |
| Acc. | quōs | quās | quae | *whom, which, what* |
| Abl. | quibus | quibus | quibus | (*from, by*) *whom, etc.* |

*a.* The forms **quī** and **quod,** which are placed in parentheses above, are used as adjectives but not as pronouns in the singular number. The nominative **quis** as a pronoun may be either masculine or feminine. It is sometimes used as a masculine adjective.

### READING EXERCISE

**163.** 1. Cujus librum habēs?
Librum meum habeō.
2. In quō locō liber meus est?
Librum tuum nōn videō.
3. Quis in viā clāmat?
Sextus clāmat in viā. Mē vocat.
4. Cūr Sextō nōn respondēs?
Nōn respondeō quod māter mea mē in tēctō manēre jubet.
5. Cūr puerō praemium dās?
Praemium puerō dō quod impiger est.
6. Quōs in viā vidēs?
Sextum et trēs amīcōs videō.
7. Quibus tua māter praemia dat?
Mea māter praemia Titō et Pūbliō dat.
8. Hortus noster est inter tēctum et viam. Ā dextrā est mūrus altus, ā sinistrā est parvum aedificium. Hoc aedificium ā tēctō nōn longē abest, et saepe ibi labōrō.

**164.** VOCABULARY

**absum, abesse,** be away, be absent, be distant
**altus, -a, -um,** high, tall, deep
**clāmō, -āre,** shout
**inter,** *prep. with acc.*, between, among
**jubeō, -ēre,** order, command
**longē,** *adv.*, at a distance, far
**mē,** me
**mūrus, -ī,** M., wall
**respondeō, -ēre,** answer, reply
**vocō, -āre,** call

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**165.** Write in Latin: 1. Whose son are you? 2. Whose (*plural*) daughters are those girls? 3. Those girls are the daughters of Sextus and Marcus. 4. To whom (*singular*) was Titus giving money? 5. Whom (*singular*) do you see in the street? 6. Whom (*plural*) do the Germans fear?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**166.** 1. What is meant by *altitude?* 2. What is the meaning of *inter-urban?* 3. What are *mural* decorations? 4. What is a *vocation?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following in the singular number and the masculine gender: *whom (direct object), whose, by whom, to whom (indirect object).* 2. Give the Latin for the following in the masculine plural: *whom (direct object), of whom (whose), by whom.* 3. Conjugate **respondeō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

---

## LESSON XXVI

### THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**167.** The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect indicative passive:

| *Singular* | *Singular* |
|---|---|
| portābar, *I was being carried* or *I was carried* | monēbar |
| portābāris, *you were being carried*, etc. | monēbāris |
| portābātur, *he was being carried*, etc. | monēbātur |

| *Plural* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portābāmur, *we were being carried*, etc. | monēbāmur |
| portābāminī, *you were being carried*, etc. | monēbāminī |
| portābantur, *they were being carried*, etc. | monēbantur |

### READING EXERCISE

**168.** 1. Sociī nostrī superābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Agrī vāstābantur et oppida ācriter oppugnābantur. Auxilium rogābātur, sed cōpiās tum nōn habēbāmus. Nunc sociōs juvāre parātī sumus.

2. Agrī nostrī vāstābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus. Auxilium postulābāmus, sed multī perīculum nōn vidēbant. Nunc sociōs habēmus, et tūtī sumus.

3. Cōnsilia mea ōlim laudābantur. Cūr nunc nōn probantur?

Cōnsilia tua ōlim probābantur quod bellum nōn timēbāmus. Sed nunc cōnsilia tua nōn bona videntur, quod patria nostra in perīculō est.

4. Quamquam populus Rōmānus magnās cōpiās habēbat, sociōs quoque habēbat. Hī sociī in bellō saepe ā populō Rōmānō auxilium rogābant. Rōmānī sociōs in bellō juvābant.

### 169. VOCABULARY

**ācriter,** *adv.*, vigorously
**juvō, -āre,** help
**ōlim,** *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time
**oppugnō, -āre,** attack
**populus, -ī,** M., people
**probō, -āre,** approve
**quamquam,** *conj.*, although
**rogō, -āre,** ask
**superō, -āre,** defeat, overcome
**videor, -ērī,** seem

STREET OF POMPEII

## EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**170.** 1. Oppidum nostrum ā Rōmānīs ācriter oppugnābā—. 2. Rōmānī ā sociīs et amīcīs juvāba—. 3. Cōnsilium meum ā Sextō et Pūbliō laudābā—. 4. Ōlim sociī nostrī ā Germānīs nōn timēba—, sed nunc time—. 5. Puer ab amīcīs auxilium rogāba –. 6. Ōlim patria tua ā sociīs nōn laudābā—, sed nunc saepe laudā—.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**171.** 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning and origin of *adjutant* and *coadjutor*. 2. Give an adjective and a noun which are derived from **populus**. 3. What is the meaning of *approbation?* Why is it spelled with two p's? 4. What is an *insuperable* difficulty?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Copy the conjugation of **moneō** in the imperfect passive as given above, and write the English meaning after each form. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they were being defeated, they were being warned, they are being warned.* 3. Decline the interrogative pronoun.

## LESSON XXVII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *IS*

THE FORMS OF *IS*

**172.**

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
| NOM. | is, *he* | ea, *she* | id, *it* |
| GEN. | ejus, *his* | ejus, *her* (possessive) | ejus, *its* |
| DAT. | eī, *to him* | eī, *to her* | eī, *to it* |
| ACC. | eum, *him* (dir. obj.) | eam, *her* (dir. obj.) | id, *it* (dir. obj.) |
| ABL. | eō (*from, by, with*) *him* | eā (*from, by, with*) *her* | eō (*from, by, with*) *it* |

| | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | eī, iī } *they* | eae, *they* | ea, *they, those things* |
| GEN. | eōrum, *their* | eārum, *their* | eōrum, *their* |
| DAT. | eīs, iīs } *to them* | eīs, iīs } *to them* | eīs, iīs } *to them* |
| ACC. | eōs, *them* (dir. obj.) | eās, *them* (dir. obj.) | ea, *them* (dir. obj.) |
| ABL. | eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them* | eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them* | eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them* |

*a.* The masculine and feminine forms will be translated like those of the neuter gender if they refer to antecedents which would be neuter in English. Thus a masculine form (**is, eum, eō,** etc.) will be used to refer to **ager** because it is masculine, and a feminine form will be used to refer to **silva.** But since *field* and *forest* are neuter in English, the pronouns which refer to them will be translated *it.*

ADJECTIVE USE OF *IS*

**173.** The forms of **is** are commonly used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, his, him, her,* etc., as has been seen, but sometimes they are used as adjectives. When they modify nouns they will be translated either *this* or *that* as the sense requires. Thus **is puer** may mean either *this boy* or *that boy,* and **ea puella** may mean either *this girl* or *that girl.* But **is** does not emphasize the idea that the thing denoted by the noun it modifies is near, as does **hic,** or that it is at some distance away, as does **ille.**

*HIC* AND *ILLE* AS PRONOUNS

**174.** The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, him, his, her,* etc., instead of the forms of **is.** The plural forms **hī, illī,** etc., mean *these* or *those (persons):* the neuter **haec, illa,** etc., mean *these things* or *those things.*

READING EXERCISE

**175.** 1. Māter nostra ex jānuā nōs vocat. In tēctum properāmus, et avunculum nostrum cum fīliīs ejus ibi vidēmus. Avunculus noster et fīliī ejus nōs salūtant. Eōs salūtāmus.

2. Avunculus meus in parvō oppidō habitat. Tēctum ejus est magnum et pulchrum. Mārcus nōn longē ā tēctō avunculī meī habitat. Interdum ad tēctum avunculī meī invītor, et Mārcum tum videō. Cum eō saepe in viīs ambulō. Ōlim in eō oppidō habitābam, et Mārcum saepe vidēbam.

3. Cūr ita timidus es? Timeō quod nūlla arma habeō, et inimīcus meus armātus est. Nūllum auxilium videō, quamquam undique circumspectō. Manēre nōn audeō.

**176.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **armātus, -a, -um,** armed | **is, ea, id,** this, that; he, she, it |
| **audeō, -ēre,** dare | **ita,** *adv.,* so |
| **avunculus, -ī,** M., uncle | **nōs,** we, us |
| **circumspectō, -āre,** look around | **salūtō, -āre,** greet |
| **inimīcus, -ī,** M., enemy | **undique,** *adv.,* on all sides |

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**177.** Write in Latin: 1. Titus is a good man, and we love him. 2. Sextus works well, but his son is not industrious. 3. I do not give him a reward, because he does not work well. 4. These men have no money, but they have many friends. 5. We were looking around on all sides, because our enemies had weapons.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**178.** 1. What was the Spanish *Armada?* From what Latin word is *armada* derived? 2. What is an *audacious* plan? 3. What is a *circumspect* person? 4. What is the meaning of *inimical?* 5. What is the source and the meaning of the abbreviation *i. e.?*

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *him (direct object), with him, with her, his (of him), by him, to him (indirect object); them (masculine, direct object), of them, with them, to them (indirect object), by them.* 2. Conjugate **audeō** in the imperfect active and **salūtō** in the imperfect passive.

ROMAN DRINKING CUPS

## THIRD REVIEW LESSON

**179.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XX–XXVII

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| aedificium, -ī | ille, illa, illud | vocō, -āre |
| auxilium, -ī | is, ea, id | |
| avunculus, -ī | | ācriter |
| cōpia, -ae | trēs | fortiter |
| cōpiae, -ārum | | ita |
| dextra, -ae | absum, abesse | iterum |
| hōra, -ae | adsum, adesse | longē |
| inimīcus, -ī | audeō, -ēre | māne |
| jaculum, -ī | circumspectō, -āre | ōlim |
| locus, -ī | clāmō, -āre | quam |
| mūrus, -ī | dēbeō, -ēre | satis |
| perīculum, -ī | dēsīderō, -āre | undique |
| populus, -ī | invītō, -āre | |
| sagitta, -ae | jubeō, -ēre | ad |
| sagittārius, -ī | juvō, -āre | ante |
| sinistra, -ae | moneō, -ēre | inter |
| socius, -ī | occupō, -āre | per |
| | oppugnō, -āre | post |
| altus, -a, -um | postulō, -āre | prō |
| armātus, -a, -um | probō, -āre | propter |
| caecus, -a, -um | pugnō, -āre | sine |
| parātus, -a, -um | timeō, -ēre | trāns |
| tertius, -a, -um | respondeō, -ēre | |
| timidus, -a, -um | salūtō, -āre | neque |
| tūtus, -a, -um | superō, -āre | quamquam |
| | vāstō, -āre | sī |
| hic, haec, hoc | videor, -ērī | |

PREPOSITIONS AS PREFIXES

**180.** Latin prepositions are sometimes joined to the beginning of other words in order to form new words. Thus **ab** and **ad** are combined with **sum** to form **absum** and **adsum,**

and **circum** (*around*) is joined to **spectō** to form **circumspectō.** A word or syllable attached to the beginning of a word to modify its meaning and thus form a new word is called a *prefix*.

### CHANGES IN MEANING WITH PREFIXES

**181.** Usually we can understand the meaning of a new word formed with a prefix when we know the meaning of the prefix and of the original word to which it is attached. Thus **circum,** *around,* and **spectō,** *look,* form **circumspectō,** *look around.* But sometimes the meaning of the new word has changed from that indicated by the parts or elements of which it is made up. Thus **expectō** (originally **exspectō**) cannot be defined exactly by taking the meanings of **ex** and **spectō,** although it keeps something of the idea of *look* (*look for*).

### INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

**182.** In addition to the prepositions employed as prefixes there are some syllables which are used as prefixes and which are never found as separate words. A very important prefix of this sort is **re-** (sometimes spelled **red-**), which regularly means *back* or *again*. From **re-** and **vocō** we have **revocō,** *call back.*

A prefix which is never used as an independent word is called an *inseparable prefix*. Thus **re-** (**red-**) is an inseparable prefix.

### CHANGES IN SPELLING

**183.** When a prefix is joined to a word, a vowel in the original word is sometimes changed. From **ex** and **capiō** we have **excipiō,** from **inter** and **faciō** we have **interficiō.** Changes of this kind take place only with short vowels. Such English words as *efficient, recipient, confess,* have come from Latin words in which such changes as those above mentioned have taken place.

### EXERCISE

Find twenty words in your English dictionary beginning with *ex* (not *extra*).

## LESSON XXVIII

### FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

**184.** The future tense of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

ACTIVE

| *Singular* | *Singular* |
|---|---|
| portābō, *I shall carry* | monēbō, *I shall warn* |
| portābis, *you will carry* | monēbis, *you will warn* |
| portābit, *he will carry* | monēbit, *he will warn* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| portābimus, *we shall carry* | monēbimus, *we shall warn* |
| portābitis, *you will carry* | monēbitis, *you will warn* |
| portābunt, *they will carry* | monēbunt, *they will warn* |

PASSIVE

| *Singular* | *Singular* |
|---|---|
| portābor, *I shall be carried* | monēbor, *I shall be warned* |
| portāberis, *you will be carried* | monēberis, *you will be warned* |
| portābitur, *he, she, it will be carried* | monēbitur, *he, she, it will be warned* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| portābimur, *we shall be carried* | monēbimur, *we shall be warned* |
| portābiminī, *you will be carried* | monēbiminī, *you will be warned* |
| portābuntur, *they will be carried* | monēbuntur, *they will be warned* |

*a*. The syllable **-bi-** is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. It has the form **-bu-** in the third person plural, **-b-** in the first person singular of both voices, and **-be-** in the second person singular of the passive.

### READING EXERCISE

**185.** 1. Germānī ā Rōmānīs superābuntur, et multa oppida eōrum occupābuntur. Sed Rōmānī haec oppida nōn dēlēbunt. Oppida Germānōrum ā perīculō servābuntur.

2. Rōmānī Germānōs superābunt et multa oppida eōrum occupābunt. Sed haec oppida ā Rōmānīs nōn dēlēbuntur. Rōmānī nōn sunt barbarī.

3. Illud oppidum crās expugnābimus. Multī vulnerābuntur, et multī necābuntur, sed oppidum ā cōpiīs nōstrīs occupābitur.

4. Gallī castra ex hōc locō mox movēbunt. Nam Rōmānī magnās cōpiās habent, et castra Gallōrum oppugnāre parātī sunt.

5. Castra nostra movēbimus, quod cōpiae Rōmānōrum nōs oppugnāre parātae sunt. Tum eōs nōn timēbimus, quamquam magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus.

### 186. VOCABULARY

**barbarī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, barbarians
**crās,** *adv.*, tomorrow
**dēleō, -ēre,** destroy, blot out
**expugnō, -āre,** take by storm, capture
**moveō, -ēre,** move
**mox,** *adv.*, soon
**nam,** *conj.*, for
**necō, -āre,** kill
**servō, -āre,** save, preserve
**vulnerō, -āre,** wound

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**187.** 1. Sociōs nostrōs juvābi— (*subject "we"*), et patria eōrum servābi—. 2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum Gallōs nōn timēb— (*will not fear*). 3. Hoc oppidum oppugnābi— (*will be attacked*) et dēlēbi—. 4. Castra nostra ex eō locō movēbā— (*subject "we"*). 5. Gallī castra nostra in hōc locō nōn oppugnāb— (*will not attack*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**188.** 1. Mention an adjective which is suggested by **barbarī**. 2. What is an *indelible* stain? 3. What is a *vulnerable* spot? 4. What is an *immovable* obstacle?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he praises, he was praising, he will praise; they fear, they feared, they will fear; I see, I saw, I shall see.* 2. Conjugate **superō** and **videō** in the future active. 3. Decline together **is gladius.**

---

## LESSON XXIX

### IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

**189.** The irregular verb **sum** does not have the tense signs which have been seen in the imperfect and future of regular verbs.

| IMPERFECT | FUTURE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Singular* |
| **eram**, *I was* | **erō**, *I shall be* |
| **erās**, *you were* | **eris**, *you will be* |
| **erat**, *he, she, it was* | **erit**, *he will be* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| **erāmus**, *we were* | **erimus**, *we shall be* |
| **erātis**, *you were* | **eritis**, *you will be* |
| **erant**, *they were* | **erunt**, *they will be* |

*a.* The present infinitive of **sum** is **esse**, *to be.*

READING EXERCISE

**190.** 1. Ōlim in hāc terrā erant silvae multīs in locīs. Per hās silvās ferae bēstiae errābant. Barbarī quoque per silvās errābant et bēstiās saepe necābant. Nunc tēcta agricolārum

et oppida vidēmus in eīs locīs ubi ōlim erant barbarī et ferae bēstiae.

2. Semper amīcus tuus erō. Amīcī tuī erunt amīcī meī, et cōs juvābō sī in perīculō erunt. Sed patriae tuae amīcus nōn sum.

3. Rōmānī tōtum oppidum dēlēre parant. Quamquam Gallī fortiter pugnābunt, superābuntur, et multī necābuntur. Cēterī erunt servī.

4. Cūr in silvā cum amīcō herī nōn erās?
In silvā nōn eram, quod aeger eram.

5. Ubi herī erat hic puer? Eum nōn vidēbam.
Hic puer in tēctō avunculī meī herī erat.

**191.** VOCABULARY

**bēstia, -ae,** F., beast, animal
**cēterī, -ae, -a,** the other, the others
**errō, -āre,** wander, err
**ferus, -a, -um,** fierce, wild
**herī,** *adv.*, yesterday
**parō, -āre,** prepare
**semper,** *adv.*, always
**servus, -ī,** M., slave, servant
**tōtus, -a, -um,** the whole, all

*a.* The adjective **cēterī** is used chiefly in the plural. Its forms in the singular may be disregarded.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**192.** Write in Latin: 1. Yesterday I was in town with my uncle. 2. Your present will always be dear to me. 3. We were in the tents behind the forest. 4. We are Romans; we will not be slaves. 5. Formerly there were many fierce animals on this island.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**193.** 1. What abbreviation is used for *et cetera?* 2. Find the meaning of the expression *Errare est humanum.* 3. What is the meaning of the motto *semper paratus?* 4. What is a *total* failure?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he is, he was, he will be; I am, I was, I shall be; he is fierce, he is warned; she will be happy, she will be praised.* 2. Conjugate **imperō** and **habeō** in the future active. 3. Decline in full the adjective **ferus.**

## LESSON XXX

### POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

THE USE OF *SUUS*

**194.** In the sentences *The boy praises his friends* and *The boys praise their friends* the words *his* and *their* refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word which translates *his, her, its,* or *their* when thus used is **suus,** which is an adjective, declined like **meus** and **tuus.** The two sentences given above are in Latin:

(1) **Puer amīcōs suōs laudat.**
(2) **Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant.**

It is possible to decide whether *his* or *their* will be used to translate **suōs** in these sentences by observing whether the subject is singular or plural.

If the subject is feminine **suus** will be translated *her.* Thus, **Puella amīcōs suōs laudat** means *The girl praises her friends.*

DISTINCTION BETWEEN *SUUS* AND *EJUS*

**195.** In the sentences *They praise his friends* and *He praises their friends* the words *his* and *their* do not refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are not the same persons as the subjects. When *his, her, its* are thus used they are translated by **ejus,** the genitive singular of **is,** and *their* similarly used is translated by **eōrum** (or **eārum**), the genitive plural of **is.**

It must be remembered that **suus** is an adjective, and takes the same gender, number, and case as the word denoting the thing possessed. Thus in the sentence above, **suōs** is masculine accusative plural to agree with **amīcōs.** The words **ejus** and **eōrum** (**eārum**) are pronouns, and do not change their forms to agree with the noun which they modify.

*a.* Sometimes possessive words are omitted in Latin when the meaning is quite clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires that possessives be used. They are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

**Fēmina fīliam amat,** *the woman loves her daughter.*

MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA

## READING EXERCISE

**196.** 1. Hic vir fīlium suum semper laudat. Sed fīlius ejus nōn est impiger, neque habet multōs amīcōs.

2. Hī virī fīliōs suōs laudant. Sed fīliī eōrum nōn sunt impigrī, neque bene labōrant. Quamquam laudantur, puerī bonī nōn sunt.

3. Cornēlia fīliam suam amat, sed fīliam amīcī meī nōn amat. Fīlia ejus ad tēctum amīcī meī nōn saepe invītātur.

4. Illī barbarī sunt perfidī, et castra nostra oppugnāre parant. Igitur arma nostra parāta sunt. Sī castra oppugnābunt, statim eōs in fugam dabimus.

Barbarī castra vestra nōn oppugnābunt, quod arma parāta habētis.

5. Lignum ex silvā ad tabernāculum portō. Soror mea ante tabernāculum cēnam parat. Tabernāculum in locō apertō est. Ex hōc locō tabernāculum vidēs.

6. Māter tua imperat; cūr nōn pārēs?
Statim parēbō.

**197.** VOCABULARY

**cēna, -ae,** F., dinner
**fuga, -ae,** F., flight
**igitur,** *conj.*, therefore
**imperō, -āre,** command
**lignum, -ī,** N., wood
**pāreō, -ēre,** obey
**perfidus, -a, -um,** treacherous
**suus, -a, -um,** his, her, its, their
**statim,** *adv.*, at once
**vester, -tra, -trum,** your (*of more than one person*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**198.** Give the Latin equivalent for the italicized words in the following sentences, and then translate the sentences into Latin: 1. The farmer is working in *his* (own) field. 2. *His* son is also working in the field. 3. The barbarians destroyed *their* (own) towns. 4. We see *their* camp from this place. 5. The woman stands in the door of *her* cottage.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**199.** 1. What is an *imperious* manner? 2. Find from a dictionary the origin of *empire*. 3. What is a *perfidious* enemy? 4. What is *lignite?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences which if translated into Latin would require a form of **suus,** and two which would require **ejus** or **eōrum.** 2. Conjugate **sum** in the future indicative. 3. Decline **suus** in full.

# LESSON XXXI

## THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

### THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

**200.** Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending in **-is**. In this declension the nominative singular is formed in a number of ways. But if the genitive singular is learned at the same time as the nominative, these variations in the nominative will cause no difficulty. This declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

**201.** There are two general classes of nouns in the third declension. They differ mainly in the ending of the genitive plural. Those which belong to the first class have the genitive plural ending in **-um**. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

| **lēx**, F., *law* | | **mīles**, M., *soldier* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Singular* | | |
| NOM. | lēx | NOM. | mīles |
| GEN. | lēgis | GEN. | mīlitis |
| DAT. | lēgī | DAT. | mīlitī |
| ACC. | lēgem | ACC. | mīlitem |
| ABL. | lēge | ABL. | mīlite |
| | *Plural* | | |
| NOM. | lēgēs | NOM. | mīlitēs |
| GEN. | lēgum | GEN. | mīlitum |
| DAT. | lēgibus | DAT. | mīlitibus |
| ACC. | lēgēs | ACC. | mīlitēs |
| ABL. | lēgibus | ABL. | mīlitibus |

| **frāter,** M., *brother* | | **homō,** M., *man* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular* | |
| NOM. | frāter | NOM. | homō |
| GEN. | frātris | GEN. | hominis |
| DAT. | frātrī | DAT. | hominī |
| ACC. | frātrem | ACC. | hominem |
| ABL. | frātre | ABL. | homine |
| | | *Plural* | |
| NOM. | frātrēs | NOM. | hominēs |
| GEN. | frātrum | GEN. | hominum |
| DAT. | frātribus | DAT. | hominibus |
| ACC. | frātrēs | ACC. | hominēs |
| ABL. | frātribus | ABL. | hominibus |

ENDINGS

**202.** The case endings, as seen above, are as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| NOM. | —[1] | **-ēs** |
| GEN. | **-is** | **-um** |
| DAT. | **-ī** | **-ibus** |
| ACC. | **-em** | **-ēs** |
| ABL. | **-e** | **-ibus** |

READING EXERCISE

**203.** 1. In Galliā est nūllus rēx. In Americā est nūllus rēx. Ōlim in multīs terrīs Eurōpae erant rēgēs. Etiam nunc in Hispāniā est rēx.

2. Frāter meus et pater tuus in bellō erant. Frāter meus erat dux, et multī eum laudābant. Pater tuus nōn erat dux, sed erat bonus mīles, et fortiter pugnābat.

[1] The ending of the nominative singular in **lēx** and **mīles** is really **-s**, which gives **-x** when combined with **g** or **c**. But this ending does not appear in all third declension nouns.

3. Castra Rōmānōrum ā tergō oppugnābimus. Paucī mīlitēs in eō locō sunt, et eōs facile superābimus. Sine morā tōta castra occupābimus.

4. Sociī iterum auxilium nostrum postulant. Patria eōrum in perīculō est, et mīlitēs nōn sunt parātī. Eōs juvābimus, quamquam bellum nōbīs nōn grātum est.

5. Hī virī tēcta sua iterum vident, et laetī sunt. Amīcī eōrum quoque laetī sunt.

### 204. VOCABULARY

**dux, ducis,** M., leader
**etiam,** *adv.*, even, also
**facile,** *adv.*, easily
**frāter, -tris,** M., brother
**mora, -ae,** F., delay
**mīles, mīlitis,** M., soldier
**pater, -tris,** M., father
**paucī, -ae, -a,** *pl.*, few, a few
**rēx, rēgis,** M., king
**tergum, -ī,** N., back; **ā tergō,** at the rear, from the rear

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**205.** Translate into Latin: 1. The king of the barbarians has large forces. 2. Our allies do not have (have not) a king. 3. I see your father and your brother in the street. 4. The soldiers praise their leaders. 5. We shall invite the soldier and his brother.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**206.** 1. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *duke*. 2. What is a *fraternal* organization? 3. Explain the statement "A *moratorium* was declared at the beginning of the war." 4. What is the meaning and derivation of *militia?* 5. What is *paternal* affection? 6. Find in a dictionary a word derived from **paucī**. 7. How is *regalia* connected in meaning with **rēx**?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **magnus rēx.** 2. Decline together **lēx bona.** 3. Give the Latin for the following: *of the leader, of the leaders, with the leader, with the leaders.* 4. Give the third person plural, active voice, of all the verbs of paragraph 3, section **203.**

---

## LESSON XXXII

### THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

#### NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

**207.** There are many neuter nouns of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways. Neuter nouns belonging to the same general class of the third declension as the masculine and feminine nouns which have been given in the preceding lessons are declined as follows:

| **flūmen,** N., *river* | | **caput,** N., *head* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Singular* | | |
| NOM. | flūmen | NOM. | caput |
| GEN. | flūminis | GEN. | capitis |
| DAT. | flūminī | DAT. | capitī |
| ACC. | flūmen | ACC. | caput |
| ABL. | flūmine | ABL. | capite |
| | *Plural* | | |
| NOM. | flūmina | NOM. | capita |
| GEN. | flūminum | GEN. | capitum |
| DAT. | flūminibus | DAT. | capitibus |
| ACC. | flūmina | ACC. | capita |
| ABL. | flūminibus | ABL. | capitibus |

**corpus**, N., *body*

| *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | corpus | NOM. | corpora |
| GEN. | corporis | GEN. | corporum |
| DAT. | corporī | DAT. | corporibus |
| ACC. | corpus | ACC. | corpora |
| ABL. | corpore | ABL. | corporibus |

*a.* These three words illustrate different formations of the nominative, but there is no difference in the manner in which they are declined. If any one of the three is learned, the others can be declined when the nominative and genitive are known. Another important neuter noun of this class is **iter**, genitive **itineris**, *road* or *journey*, which appears in a later lesson.

*b.* In the neuter noun **templum** of the second declension, we have seen that the accusative singular is the same as the nominative singular, that the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. These facts are also true of the neuter nouns of the third declension given above, and they are true of all neuter nouns in the Latin language, no matter what the declension to which they belong.

### READING EXERCISE: *PUER QUĪ* (WHO) *NATAT*

**208.** 1. Tēctum nostrum nōn longē ā rīpā flūminis abest. Saepe in eō flūmine natō aut in rīpā stō. Frāter meus quoque interdum in flūmine natat. Natāre amāmus. In mediō flūmine est magnum saxum. Ad saxum natāmus, tum in saxō diū sedēmus et cēterōs puerōs spectāmus. Flūmen nōn altum est, et caput meum vidēs eum in flūmine stō. Corpora valida habēmus quod saepe natāmus et quod in agrīs labōrāmus.

2. Puerī Rōmānī quoque natāre amābant. Rōma est in rīpā magnī flūminis, et in flūmine puerī Rōmānī saepe natābant. Etiam hieme Rōmānī in flūmine natābant. Illī virī corpora valida habēbant, et mīlitēs bonī erant.

209. VOCABULARY

**aut,** *conj.*, or
**caput, capitis,** N., head
**corpus, corporis,** N., body
**diū,** *adv.*, for a long time, long
**flūmen, flūminis,** N., river
**medius, -a, -um,** middle, the middle of
**natō, -āre,** swim
**rīpa, -ae,** F., bank (*of a stream*)
**saxum, -ī,** N., rock, stone
**sedeō, -ēre,** sit

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**210.** Translate into Latin: 1. From this place I see the river. 2. This horse has a small head. 3. The soldiers have strong bodies. 4. The boys sometimes swim in the rivers. 5. There[1] are forests on the banks of the rivers.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**211.** 1. What is *capital* punishment? *corporal* punishment? 2. Find an English word from **medius.** 3. What are *riparian* rights? 4. What is a *natatorium?* 5. What is a *sedentary* occupation?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Rewrite the last sentence of paragraph 1, section **208,** changing the noun **corpora** and all the verbs to the singular number. 2. Decline together **hoc flūmen.** 3. Conjugate **sedeō** in the future active. 4. Give the accusative singular of **rīpa, equus, rēx, mīles, corpus, flūmen.**

[1] See section **54,** page 20.

## LESSON XXXIII

### THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

#### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

**212.** The second of the two general classes of nouns of the third declension differs from the first class in that the genitive plural ends in **-ium** instead of **-um.** There are also a few other differences. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

| | **collis,** M., *hill* | **nūbēs,** F., *cloud* | **nox,** F., *night* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular* | |
| NOM. | collis | nūbēs | nox |
| GEN. | collis | nūbis | noctis |
| DAT. | collī | nūbī | noctī |
| ACC. | collem | nūbem | noctem |
| ABL. | colle | nūbe | nocte |
| | | *Plural* | |
| NOM. | collēs | nūbēs | noctēs |
| GEN. | collium | nūbium | noctium |
| DAT. | collibus | nūbibus | noctibus |
| ACC. | collīs, -ēs | nūbīs, -ēs | noctīs, -ēs |
| ABL. | collibus | nūbibus | noctibus |

*a.* The Romans sometimes used **-īs** and sometimes **-ēs** as the ending of the accusative plural of these nouns. The form in **-īs** is more commonly employed.

#### CLASSES OF MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-IUM*

**213.** The following two classes include practically all masculine and feminine nouns which have the genitive plural in **-ium**:

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs,** and having the same num-

ber of syllables in the nominative and in the genitive singular: **avis,** *gen.* **avis; nūbēs,** *gen.* **nūbis.**

(2) Nouns which have two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular: **nox,** *gen.* **noctis.**

Other masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension regularly have the genitive plural in **-um.** In this book the genitive plural ending **-ium** is printed in the vocabulary after nouns which have that ending.

### READING EXERCISE: *HOMŌ QUĪ LONGĒ Ā TĒCTŌ SUŌ EST*

**214.** Nox est, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silent. Lūx obscūra est propter nūbēs, quamquam lūna vidētur. Longē ā tēctō meō sum. Ex summō colle parvum oppidum videō. Appropinquābō et cibum rogābō. Nam dēfessus sum, et nūllam pecūniam habeō. Sī nōn barbarī sunt, cibum mihi dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābō.

Cibum eī dabimus, nam dēfessus est. Nōn sumus barbarī. Longē ā tēctō suō est, et nūllam pecūniam habet. Nūllōs amīcōs in hōc locō habet. Sed homō est, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet.

**215.** VOCABULARY

**appropinquō, -āre,** approach
**avis, avis, -ium,** F., bird
**cibus, -ī,** M., food
**collis, collis, -ium,** M., hill
**homō, hominis,** M., man
**lūx, lūcis,** F., light
**nox, noctis, -ium,** F., night
**nūbēs, nūbis, -ium,** F., cloud
**sileō, -ēre,** be silent
**summus, -a, -um,** highest, highest part of, top of

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**216.** Translate into Latin: 1. This boy is a friend of the birds. 2. The nights are long in winter. 3. I see the light in the window of the cottage. 4. We are hastening from the street because we see the clouds. 5. This man has no food because he has no money.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**217.** 1. What is an *aviator?* 2. What is a *translucent* substance? 3. What are *nocturnal* birds? 4. What is meant by the phrase *summum bonum?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive singular of all the nouns in the first two lines of section **214**. 2. Decline together **collis altus**. 3. Decline together **avis pulchra**. 4. Conjugate **appropinquō** and **sileō** in the imperfect active, and give the meaning of each form.

## LESSON XXXIV

### THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

**218.** The second class of nouns of the third declension has a number of nouns which are neuter. The nominative of these ends in **-e, -al,** or **-ar.** They are declined as follows:

**īnsigne,** N., *badge* **exemplar,** N., *pattern* **animal,** N., *animal*

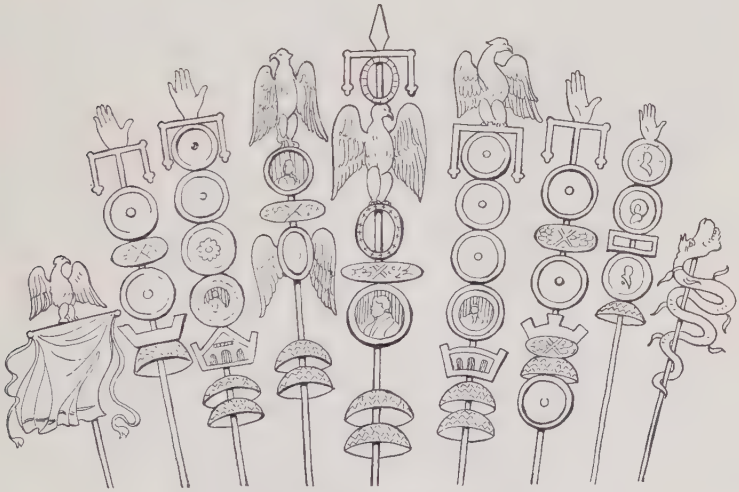
| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | īnsigne | exemplar | animal |
| GEN. | īnsignis | exemplāris | animālis |
| DAT. | īnsignī | exemplārī | animālī |
| ACC. | īnsigne | exemplar | animal |
| ABL. | īnsignī | exemplārī | animālī |
| | *Plural* | | |
| NOM. | īnsignia | exemplāria | animālia |
| GEN. | īnsignium | exemplārium | animālium |
| DAT. | īnsignibus | exemplāribus | animālibus |
| ACC. | īnsignia | exemplāria | animālia |
| ABL. | īnsignibus | exemplāribus | animālibus |

*a.* In addition to having the genitive plural ending in **-ium,** these nouns differ from the neuter nouns of the first class in that the ablative singular ends in **-ī** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia.**

### GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

**219.** The following rules will help in determining the gender of nouns of the third declension:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine.
(2) Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.
(3) Nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar, -n,** and **-t** are neuter.



ROMAN STANDARDS

### READING EXERCISE: *INSIGNIA MĪLITUM*

**220.** 1. Ōlim mīlitēs in proeliīs īnsignia habēbant. Sīc hostēs et amīcī nōtī erant. Signa quoque habēbant. Inter-

dum haec signa erant figūrae animālium. In pictūrā exemplāria hōrum signōrum vidētis. Nunc signa in proeliīs nōn vidēmus, et īnsignia saepe cēlantur.

2. Hostēs appropinquant. Ex hōc locō īnsignia eōrum vidēmus. Oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, sed mīlitēs nostrī parātī sunt, et nōn timēmus. Hostēs superābuntur et oppidum nostrum tūtum erit quod mīlitēs bonōs patria nostra habet.

### 221. VOCABULARY

**animal, animālis, -ium,** N., animal
**cēlō, -āre,** conceal
**exemplar, -āris, -ium,** N., copy, specimen
**figūra, -ae,** F., figure
**hostis, hostis, -ium,** M., enemy
**īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium,** N., decoration, badge
**nōtus, -a, -um,** known, well known
**proelium, -ī,** N., battle
**sīc,** *adv.*, thus, so
**signum, -ī,** N., sign, standard

*a.* The word **hostis** is applied to an enemy of one's country, while **inimīcus** means a personal enemy.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**222.** 1. Corpora hōrum animāl— parva sunt. 2. Dux host— (*of the enemies*) gladium habet. 3. Frāter meus īnsignia pulchr— habet. 4. Mīlitēs nostrī sign— (*standards*) in proeliīs nōn portant. 5. Haec pictūra pulchra multīs nōt— est.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**223.** 1. What is *exemplary* conduct? 2. Find an adjective and a noun derived from **hostis.** 3. What is meant by the *insignia* of office? 4. What distinction in use is commonly made between *notorious* and *noted?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **hostis miser.** 2. Decline together **parvum animal.** 3. Rewrite paragraph 2 of section **220,** changing all the verbs to the imperfect tense. 4. Give the genitive plural of **collis, homō, nox, hostis, figūra, proelium.**

## LESSON XXXV

### PERFECT TENSE

#### MEANING OF THE PERFECT

**224.** In addition to the imperfect, Latin has another tense, called the *perfect,* denoting past time.

The perfect tense of the Latin verb is sometimes translated by such forms as *I have carried, you have carried,* etc., and sometimes by the simple past tense *I carried, you carried,* etc. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it easy to decide which of these two translations should be used.

#### FORMS OF THE PERFECT

**225.** The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the perfect active:

*Singular*

portāvī, *I carried,* or *I have carried*
portāvistī, *you carried,* or *you have carried*
portāvit, *he carried,* or *he has carried*

*Plural*

portāvimus, *we carried,* or *we have carried*
portāvistis, *you carried,* or *you have carried*
portāvērunt, *they carried,* or *they have carried*

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| monuī, *I warned,* or *I have warned* | monuimus |
| monuistī | monuistis |
| monuit | monuērunt |

*a.* The verbs **amō, laudō, superō,** and most other verbs of the first conjugation form their perfects like **portō.** The perfects of **terreō, timeō,** and **habeō** are like that of **moneō.** The perfect of **maneō** is **mānsī, mānsistī,** etc.

*b.* The personal endings used in the perfect active differ from those used with the other tenses. They are as follows:

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **-ī** | **-imus** |
| **-istī** | **-istis** |
| **-it** | **-ērunt** |

THE PERFECT OF *SUM*

**226.** The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the perfect:

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| fuī, *I have been* | fuimus, *we have been* |
| fuistī, *you have been* | fuistis, *you have been* |
| fuit, *he has been* | fuērunt, *they have been* |

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND THE IMPERFECT

**227.** The distinction between the perfect and the imperfect tenses consists in the fact that the imperfect represents an act as going on in past time or denotes a situation in past time, while the perfect either denotes a single past act without reference to its continuance or is equivalent to the English present perfect.

In the sentence *We crossed the river* a single act in past time is denoted, and hence the perfect will be used in Latin. Similarly, in the sentence *We have crossed the river,* the verb is in the present perfect, and the Latin equivalent will require the perfect. On the other hand, *We were crossing the river* represents an act as going on in past time, and *Everyone feared war*

denotes a situation in past time. Hence the imperfect will be used in these two sentences.

### READING EXERCISE

**228.** 1. Gēns vestra bellum amat, et semper amāvit. Rōmānī vōs in proeliīs saepe superāvērunt et multās urbēs vestrās etiam expugnāvērunt. Sed in terrā vestrā nōn mānsērunt.

2. Cīvēs nostrī bellum nōn dēsīderant, sed gentem vestram nōn timent neque timuērunt. Nōn sunt ignāvī, sed nōn facile ad bellum excitantur.

3. Cūr hūc properāvistī? Hūc properāvī, quod frāter meus in perīculō est et auxilium meum postulat. Auxilium tuum quoque dēsīderat. Tibi semper benignus fuit, et auxilium dare dēbēs.

4. Frātrem tuum saepe monuī. Cūr perīculum nōn videt? Auxilium nōn dabō.

**229.** VOCABULARY

**cīvis, cīvis, -ium,** M., citizen
**excitō, -āre,** arouse, stir up
**expugnō, -āre,** take by storm, capture
**gēns, gentis, -ium,** F., nation
**hūc,** *adv.*, to this place, hither
**ignāvus, -a, -um,** cowardly
**urbs, urbis, -ium,** F., city
**vōs,** you (*plural, nominative and accusative*)

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**230.** 1. Mīlitēs hunc ducem semper amāv—. 2. Pater meus saepe frātrem meum monu—. 3. Sociī nostrī auxilium postulāv—. 4. Amīcī nostrī benignī fu—, et eōs amāmus. 5. Hanc gentem timu— (*subject "we"*).

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**231.** 1. What is meant by *civic* virtues? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *civilization* and **cīvis**? 3. Give an English noun which is derived from **excitō.** 4. What is the difference between *urban* and *urbane?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **moneō** and **maneō** through the perfect indicative active, and give the meaning of each form. 2. Decline **cīvis**. 3. Write the third person plural of **portō** and **moneō** in the active voice, in all the tenses given thus far.

## FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

**232.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXVIII–XXXV

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| animal, -ālis | pictūra, -ae | errō, -āre |
| avis, avis | proelium, -ī | excitō, -āre |
| bēstia, -ae | rēx, rēgis | expugnō, -āre |
| caput, capitis | rīpa, -ae | imperō, -āre |
| cēna, -ae | saxum, -ī | moveō, -ēre |
| cibus, -ī | servus, -ī | natō, -āre |
| cīvis, cīvis | signum, -ī | necō, -āre |
| collis, collis | tergum, -ī | pāreō, -ēre |
| corpus, corporis | urbs, urbis | sedeō, -ēre |
| dux, ducis | | servō, -āre |
| exemplum, -ī | cēterī, -ae, -a | sileō, -ēre |
| figūra, -ae | dēfessus, -a, -um | vulnerō, -āre |
| flūmen, flūminis | ferus, -a, -um | |
| frāter, frātris | ignāvus, -a, -um | crās |
| fuga, -ae | medius, -a, -um | diū |
| gēns, gentis | nōtus, -a, -um | etiam |
| homō, hominis | paucī, -ae, -a | facile |
| hostis, hostis | perfidus, -a, -um | herī |
| īnsigne, īnsignis | summus, -a, -um | hūc |
| lignum, -ī | suus, -a, -um | iterum |
| lūx, lūcis | tōtus, -a, -um | semper |
| mīles, mīlitis | vester, -tra, -trum | statim |
| mora, -ae | | |
| nox, noctis | appropinquō, -āre | aut |
| nūbēs, nūbis | cēlō, -āre | igitur |
| pater, patris | dēleō, -ēre | nam |

### WORD STUDY: ASSIMILATION

**233.** The form of a Latin prefix is sometimes changed because of the letter which immediately follows it. For example, before words beginning with **p** the prefix **ad** becomes **ap-**. Thus from **ad** and **propinquō** we get **appropinquō.** The change of a letter because of the influence of an adjoining letter is called *assimilation.* The words **occupō** and **oppugnō** in the review vocabulary of page 73 are examples of assimilation. The prefix with which they are both formed is **ob,** *against.* Before **c** this has become **oc-** (**ob**+**capiō, occupō**), and before **p** it has become **op-** (**ob**+**pugnō, oppugnō**).

Sometimes a letter is not changed to the same letter as that which follows, but to one which can be easily pronounced with it. The prefix **com-** becomes **con-** before **d** or **s.** Hence we have **condūcō** from **com-** and **dūcō,** and **cōnservō** from **com-** and **servō.** The meaning of this prefix will be explained later.

### SPELLING OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**234.** The fact that certain English words have doubled consonants (*acc-, occ-, off-*) is due to assimilation in the Latin words from which they have come. Thus *difficult* is from a Latin word in the development of which the inseparable prefix **dis-** has become **dif-** before a word beginning with **f**; hence we have *ff* in *difficult.* In the word *correction* the letters *cor* represent the prefix **com-,** and the second *r* is from **regō** to which **com-** has been prefixed, giving *rr* in the derived word.

(1) The following words have *aff-* because they are from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **f.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| affable | affidavit | affix |
| affect | affiliate | afflict |
| affection | affirm | affront |

(2) The following words have *ann-* because they are from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **n.**

annex
annihilate
annotate
announce
annul

EXERCISE

Find how many words in your English dictionary begin with *acc-*. (Nearly all these are derived from the combination of **ad** and a word beginning with **c**.)

## LESSON XXXVI

### PAST PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

**235.** The past passive participle of **portō** is **portātus, -a, -um,** translated either by the compound participle *having been carried*, or simply by the past participle *carried*. The participle of **moneō** is **monitus, -a, -um,** meaning *having been warned*, or simply *warned*. Thus, **Puer ā patre monitus ad scholam properābat,** may be translated *The boy, having been warned by his father, was hastening to school*, or *The boy, warned by his father, was hastening to school.*

The past passive participle is declined throughout like **bonus.** A participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

PARTICIPLES

(25) There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also serve to tell something about a person or thing very much as an adjective does. Thus, in the sentence, *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help*, the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten*, but it serves to tell something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle*, and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action and it has the character of an adjective in that it tells something about a noun or pronoun.

*a.* The past participle of **juvō** is **jūtus, -a, -um,** of **dō** is **datus, -a, -um** (differing from **portātus** in that the **a** is short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given thus far form their past participles like **portō**:[1] for example, **laudātus, amātus,** etc.

### READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS URBEM OPPUGNĀRE PARANT*

**236.** 1. Vigilēs ex moenibus urbis prōspectant et agmen hostium procul vident. Hostēs appropinquant et urbem oppugnāre parant. Sed portae et moenia urbis sunt valida, et ante moenia est vāllum. Mīlitēs ā duce monitī nunc ad moenia properant. Cīvēs auxilium ā sociīs quoque expectant.

2. Ad urbem appropinquāmus et eam oppugnāre parāmus. Mīlitēs nostrī sunt dēfessī, quod iter hodiē longum fuit. Sed statim oppugnābimus, quod cīvēs urbis auxilium ā sociīs expectant.

3. Auxilium ā cīvibus expectātum nōn adest. Cīvēs et mīlitēs in urbe fortiter pugnant, sed mox erit fīnis proeliī. Urbs expugnāta dēlēbitur. Multī cīvēs erunt servī.

**237.** VOCABULARY

**agmen, agminis,** N., column, line
**fīnis, fīnis,** M., end, limit; *plural,* country, territory
**iter, itineris,** N., road, journey, march
**moenia, -ium,** N., *pl.,* walls (*of a city*)
**porta, -ae,** F., gate
**procul,** *adv.,* at a distance
**prōspectō, -āre,** look forth, look
**vāllum, -ī,** N., rampart, wall
**vigil, vigilis,** M., sentinel

*a.* The declension of **iter** is given in full on page 243. Its cases are formed in accordance with the same principles as the nouns given on page 85.

[1] The verb **stō** has no past participle.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**238.** Translate into Latin: 1. The soldier, having been warned, hastened to the camp. 2. The enemy, having been defeated, will be slaves. 3. The boys, having been praised, will work well. 4. My brother, not having been invited, remained in town. 5. The girl, having often been warned, fears danger.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**239.** 1. Where is *finis* sometimes found in English books? 2. What is an *itinerary?* 3. What is the meaning of the word *portal?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the complete declension of **portātus** and **monitus.** 2. Give the form of **amātus** which will agree with **patria** as subject; with the word for "woman" as object. 3. Decline **vigil.**

## LESSON XXXVII

### PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS

#### THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

**240.** There are certain forms of a verb which show us important facts regarding the conjugation of the verb in the different tenses. These are called *principal parts.*

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the past passive participle. Any form of a verb may be made when these are known.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

**portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**
**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**

*a.* The neuter form of the past participle is given in the principal parts for the reason that the past participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms. But for most verbs, the participle is declined in all three genders. Thus, **amātus, -a, -um, territus, -a, -um,** etc.

### THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

**241.** All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **juvō, dō,** and **stō,** form their principal parts like **portō.** The principal parts of these three are as follows:

**dō, dare, dedī, datum**
**juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum**
**stō, stāre, stetī**

*a.* The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive and past participle.

### THE STEMS OF THE VERB

**242.** If from the present infinitive **laudāre** we drop **-re** we have left what is known as the *present stem.* The stem of a verb is the body of the verb to which tense signs and endings are added.

A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the past participle: **portātum,** stem **portāt-; monitum,** stem **monit-.**

### IMPORTANCE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS AND STEMS

**243.** In order to find the stems of a verb, it is necessary to know its principal parts. These facts which have been stated regarding the formation and use of stems are true of all verbs

in the Latin language. It is therefore very important that they be remembered.

### USE OF THE STEMS

**244.** The present, the past, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. The perfect active indicative, which has already been given, and the past perfect and future perfect indicative, which will be given later, are formed on this stem.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

### THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

**245.** The principal parts of the second conjugation verbs which have been given thus far are as follows:

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī
timeō, timēre, timuī
sileō, silēre, siluī
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum
audeō, audēre

*a.* Some verbs do not have a past passive participle. This is true of the verbs which have only three principal parts in the list above. The perfect of **audeō** is omitted at this time because it is not formed like that of the other verbs above.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE AND THE PAST INFINITIVE

#### THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**246.** The perfect indicative passive, unlike the other tenses which have been given, is not formed by adding personal endings to a stem. Instead, the past passive participle is used with the present tense of the verb **sum.** Two separate words are used to represent each person and number. The perfect indicative passive of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

*Singular*

portātus sum, *I was carried* or *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he was carried* or *he has been carried*

*Plural*

portātī sumus, *we were carried* or *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they were carried* or *they have been carried*

*Singular*

monitus sum, *I was warned* or *I have been warned*
monitus es, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitus est, *he was warned* or *he has been warned*

*Plural*

monitī sumus, *we were warned* or *we have been warned*
monitī estis, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitī sunt, *they were warned* or *they have been warned*

*a.* The forms of this tense are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

*b.* The participle used in forming this tense agrees with the subject in gender and number.

### PAST INFINITIVES

**247.** There is a past infinitive in Latin, as in English. Its forms and meanings in both voices are as follows:

| | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|---|
| I. | portāvisse, *to have carried* | portātus esse, *to have been carried* |
| II. | monuisse, *to have warned* | monitus esse, *to have been warned* |

*a.* The past active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. The past passive infinitive consists of the past passive participle and the present infinitive of **sum.**

The past infinitive of **sum** is **fuisse,** *to have been.*

### READING EXERCISE

**248.** 1. Agrī nostrī ab hostibus vāstātī sunt, et multa oppida occupāta sunt. Auxilium ā cīvibus nostrīs populō Rōmānō in bellō ōlim datum est, et populus Rōmānus nunc nōs juvāre dēbet. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus.

2. Urbs nostra erit in (*on*) illō parvō monte. Locus idōneus est quod flūmen nōn longē abest, et ex eō flūmine aquam habēbimus. Urbs Rōma appellābitur. Circum urbem erit mūrus. Rīpa ulterior flūminis nunc est in terrā Etrūscōrum, sed illa terra mox erit Rōmāna. Etrūscōs superābimus. Nōmen urbis nostrae multīs gentibus nōtum erit.

### 249. VOCABULARY

**appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** call, name
**aqua, -ae,** F., water
**circum,** *prep. with acc.,* around
**Etrūscī, -ōrum,** M., *pl.,* the Etruscans
**idōneus, -a, -um,** suitable
**mōns, montis, -ium,** M., mountain
**nōmen, nōminis,** N., name
**Rōma, -ae,** F., Rome
**ulterior,** farther

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**250.** Translate into Latin: 1. Our soldiers have often been praised. 2. The cities of our allies have been seized by the enemy (*plural*). 3. Your son has not been seen. 4. But I have seen your daughter in the street. 5. The money has not been given to this man.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**251.** 1. What is an *appellation?* 2. What is an *aqueduct?* 3. Find two compounds of **circum.** 4. What is the meaning of *nomenclature?* 5. What is an *ulterior* motive?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he has warned, he has been warned; they have ordered, they have been ordered; we have praised, we have been praised.* 2. Rewrite the first sentence of 1, section **248,** changing the verb to the active voice, and making such other changes as are necessary.

THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORATION)

## LESSON XXXIX

### THIRD CONJUGATION -*ō* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

**252.** Verbs of the third conjugation have the ending **-ere** in the present active infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is **-ēre** (long **e**). There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending **-ō** and the other class with the ending **-iō** in the first person singular of the present active indicative.

Those of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

**dūcō,** *I lead*

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | |
| dūcō, *I lead* | dūcor, *I am led* |
| dūcis, *you lead* | dūceris, *you are led* |
| dūcit, *he leads* | dūcitur, *he is led* |
| *Plural* | |
| dūcimus, *we lead* | dūcimur, *we are led* |
| dūcitis, *you lead* | dūciminī, *you are led* |
| dūcunt, *they lead* | dūcuntur, *they are led* |

**253.** One or more forms of the following third conjugation verbs of the same class as **dūcō** have appeared in the preceding lessons:

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*

### READING EXERCISE: *BONUS DUX*

**254.** Illa legiō vincit, quod ducem bonum habet. Is bene dūcit, et mīlitēs hostēs nōn timent. Sed pars cōpiārum nostrārum habet alium ducem, et hī mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Hostēs castra oppugnābunt et occupābunt. Ille dux nunc nūntium mittit, et hic nūntius auxilium postulābit. Auxilium mittere parāmus. Sine bonō duce mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Bonus dux semper parātus est, et hostēs eum timent. Castra in locō inīquō nōn pōnit, neque mīlitēs ejus sine armīs sunt.

### 255. VOCABULARY

**alius, alia, aliud,** another
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum,** lead
**inīquus, -a, -um,** unfavorable, unjust
**legiō, -ōnis,** F., legion
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum,** send
**nūntius, -ī,** M., messenger
**pars, partis,** F., part
**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,** place, pitch
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum,** conquer, defeat

*a.* The genitive and dative singular of **alius** are not formed like those of regular adjectives of the first and second declensions. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**256.** 1. Castra nostra in rīpā flūminis pōni—(*subject "we"*). 2. Cīvēs cibum ad mīlitēs mitt—. 3. Cibus ā cīvibus ad mīlitēs mitti—. 4. Quis illam legiōnem dūci—? 5. Legiō nostra ducem bonum habe— (*has*).

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**257.** 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *alias*[1] as an English word. 2. Give two English words from the present

[1] The form **alias** is really a Latin adverb which is derived from the adjective **alius**.

stem of **dūcō** and two from the participial stem. 3. What is the literal meaning of *particle?* 4. What is the difference in meaning between the verbs *convince* and *convict*, both of which are derived from **vincō?**

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **pōnō, jubeō,** and **postulō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the third person plural, active and passive, of **vincō, habeō,** and **expectō.** 3. Conjugate **vincō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive.

## LESSON XL

### THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

**258.** The present indicative of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is as follows:

**capiō,** *I take*

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Singular* |
| capiō, *I take* | capior, *I am taken* |
| capis, *you take* | caperis, *you are taken* |
| capit, *he takes* | capitur, *he is taken* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| capimus, *we take* | capimur, *we are taken* |
| capitis, *you take* | capiminī, *you are taken* |
| capiunt, *they take* | capiuntur, *they are taken* |

*a.* The only forms in which the verbs of this class differ from those of the first class in the present tense are the first person singular and the third person plural.

### READING EXERCISE: *CENTURIŌ CUM DUCE BARBARŌRUM PUGNAT*

**259.** Centuriō Rōmānus gladium et scūtum capit et prō castrīs prōcēdit. Dux barbarōrum quoque prōcēdit. Hī duo pugnant, et centuriō ducem barbarōrum interficit. Tum mīlitēs Rōmānī centuriōnem excipiunt cum magnīs clāmōribus, et imperātor eī praemium dat.

Gladium et scūtum capiō et prō castrīs prōcēdō. Cum duce barbarōrum pugnō, et eum interficiō. Tum mīlitēs et imperātor mē laudant et mihi praemium datur. Comitēs meī laetī sunt quod ita laudor. Pater meus quoque laetus erit quod bonus mīles et bonus centuriō sum.

**260.** VOCABULARY

**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum**, take, capture
**centuriō, -ōnis,** M., centurion
**clāmor, -ōris,** M., shout
**comes, comitis,** M., companion
**duo, duae, duo,** two
**excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** receive
**imperātor, -ōris,** M., general
**interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** kill
**prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** proceed, advance

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**261.** 1. Mīlitēs gladiōs et scūta capi—. 2. Rōmānī multōs barbarōs in proeliō interfici—. 3. Ducem nostrum cum magnīs clāmōribus excipi—(*subject "we"*). 4. Centuriō ā mīlitibus cum magnīs clāmōribus excipi—. 5. Auxilium ā Rōmānīs nōn mitti—.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**262.** 1. What is a *clamorous* throng? Find from a dictionary the derivation of the word *count* (a title of nobility). 3. What is a *dual* empire? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *emperor*.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **interficiō** and **mittō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they make, they see, they place, they send; we receive, we conquer, we order, we demand.*

## LESSON XLI

### ABLATIVE OF MEANS

#### THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

**263.** In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition. In the sentence **Puer saxō vulnerātus est,** *the boy was wounded by the stone,* the phrase *by the stone* is translated by the ablative **saxō,** without any preposition. In like manner in the sentence **Gallī gladiīs pugnant,** *the Gauls fight with swords,* the ablative **gladiīs** is used without a preposition.

#### THE THING BY WHICH, AND THE PERSON BY WHOM OR WITH WHOM

**264.** The phrases *by the stone* and *with swords* in the sentences above denote the means by which or with which an act is done. In the sentences *The boy was helped by the man* and *He walks with a friend* the phrases *by the man* and *with a friend* are quite different from the preceding phrases. In the first of these sentences *by the man* denotes the person by whom the act was done, and will be translated **ā virō**; in the second *with a friend* denotes the person in company with whom an act is done and will be translated **cum amīcō.**

#### MEANS, AGENT, AND ACCOMPANIMENT

**265.** A word used to express the means with which an act is done, as **saxō** and **gladiīs** above, is said to be in the *ablative*

*of means.* A word denoting the person by whom an act is done is said to be in the *ablative of agent*, and a word denoting the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is said to be in the *ablative of accompaniment.* The ablative of means has no preposition, the ablative of agent always has **ā** or **ab**, and the ablative of accompaniment commonly has **cum.** In the preceding paragraph **virō** is an ablative of agent and **amīcō** an ablative of accompaniment.

### READING EXERCISE

**266.** 1. Gladiō mē dēfendō et scūtō mē tegō. Jaculum quoque habeō. Jaculum in (*at*) hostēs jaciō cum hī nōn longē absunt. Hostēs interdum jaculīs graviter vulnerantur aut interficiuntur. In capite meō est galea. Hostēs quoque gladiōs et scūta et galeās habent. Gladiī eōrum sunt longī, sed gladius meus nōn longus est. Barbarī saepe longīs hastīs pugnant. Rōmānī hastās nōn habent.

2. Barbarī nunc agrōs Etrūscōrum vāstant et Etrūscōs ē patriā expellere cupiunt. Etrūscī prō patriā pugnant. Terra Etrūscōrum ā Rōmā nōn longē abest, sed Etrūscī sunt hostēs Rōmānōrum, et saepe cum eīs bellum gerunt.

### 267. VOCABULARY

**cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** wish
**dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum,** defend
**expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,** drive out
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum,** bear, carry, carry on, wage
**graviter,** *adv.*, seriously, heavily
**hasta, -ae,** F., spear
**jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum,** throw
**longus, -a, -um,** long
**tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum,** cover, protect

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**268.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The soldier wounds the barbarian with a sword. 2. The leader of the soldiers was killed by a javelin. 3. The Gauls and Ger-

mans fought with spears. 4. The centurion protects his friend with a shield. 5. The soldier's head is protected by a helmet.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**269.** 1. What is an *indefensible* attitude? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *reject* and **jaciō?** 3. What is *longevity?* 4. What is the meaning of *cupidity?* What connection can you see between the meaning of this word and **cupiō?**

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the difference in the form of translation for the phrases with *by* in the sentences *He was wounded by a javelin* and *He was wounded by the enemy?* 2. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* which would require a preposition if translated into Latin. 3. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* or *with* which would be translated into Latin without a preposition.

THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS

## LESSON XLII

### FOURTH CONJUGATION

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *AUDIŌ*

**270.** The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-īre**: **audiō,** *I hear,* **audīre,** *to hear.* The present indicative is as follows:

**audiō,** *I hear*

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | |
| audiō, *I hear* | audior, *I am heard* |
| audīs, *you hear* | audīris, *you are heard* |
| audit, *he hears* | audītur, *he is heard* |
| *Plural* | |
| audīmus, *we hear* | audīmur, *we are heard* |
| audītis, *you hear* | audīminī, *you are heard* |
| audiunt, *they hear* | audiuntur, *they are heard* |

*a.* In the present indicative of the fourth conjugation, as seen above, the characteristic vowel (**ī**) is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive. The third conjugation has the corresponding vowel short.

#### THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**271.** In the perfect, active and passive, verbs of the third and fourth conjugations are conjugated in the same manner as verbs of the first and second conjugations. The perfect and the participial stems are found from the principal parts, as has already been explained (p. 101), and the tense signs and personal endings are used with the perfect stems in exactly the same manner as with the perfect stems of **portō** and **moneō**:

**dūxī, dūxistī,** etc.; **ductus sum, ductus es,** etc.; **audīvī, audīvistī,** etc.; **audītus sum, audītus es,** etc.

### READING EXERCISE

**272.** 1. Sonum multōrum pedum audiō. Hostēs appropinquant. Scūta et galeās eōrum per tenebrās videō. Castra nostra expugnāre cupiunt, sed arma parāta habēmus. Nōn sōlum prō patriā sed etiam prō vītā pugnābimus, et nōn facile superābimur. Dux noster cum multīs mīlitibus mox aderit, et hī nōs juvābunt. Alīī mīlitēs nunc castra ā tergō mūniunt, et ea pars mox tūta erit.

2. Sonus multōrum pedum audītur. Sed castra mūniuntur, et mīlitēs Rōmānī parātī sunt. Mīlitēs sciunt numerum hostium esse magnum.

3. Hostēs sonum pedum nostrōrum audiunt. Scūta et galeās nostrās per tenebrās vident. Castra eōrum expugnāre cupimus, sed arma parāta habent, et alīī mīlitēs cum duce bonō appropinquant.

### 273. VOCABULARY

**audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** hear
**mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** fortify
**nōn sōlum . . sed etiam,** not only . . but also
**pēs, pedis,** M., foot
**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum,** know
**sonus, -ī,** M., sound
**tenebrae, -ārum,** F., *pl.*, darkness
**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum,** come

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**274.** Translate into Latin: 1. We fortify the camp, and we prepare arms. 2. Loud (great) shouts are heard in the forest. 3. The sound of battle is heard in the streets. 4. Your brother comes alone from the house. 5. We come from a city of your allies.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**275.** 1. What is an *auditorium?* 2. Give an adjective which is derived from **audiō.** 3. What are *munitions?* 4. What is a *pedestal?* Give another word from **pēs.** 5. What is the original meaning of *science?* 6. What is a *sonorous* voice?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **mūniō** and **cupiō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *he comes, he has come; he is heard, he is taken; to come, to take; we come, we have come, we take.*

THEATER OF POMPEII

## LESSON XLIII

### IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**276.** The tense sign of the imperfect indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-bā-**, as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** is formed exactly like the same tense of **moneō**. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **-iē-** before the tense sign.

dūcēbam, *I was leading* audiēbam, *I was hearing*
dūcēbar, *I was being led* audiēbar, *I was being heard*

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular* | |
| dūcēbam | dūcēbar | audiēbam | audiēbar |
| dūcēbās | dūcēbāris | audiēbās | audiēbāris |
| dūcēbat | dūcēbātur | audiēbat | audiēbātur |
| | | *Plural* | |
| dūcēbāmus | dūcēbāmur | audiēbāmus | audiēbāmur |
| dūcēbātis | dūcēbāminī | audiēbātis | audiēbāminī |
| dūcēbant | dūcēbantur | audiēbant | audiēbantur |

*a.* The imperfect of **capiō** and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is exactly like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation: **capiēbam, capiēbās,** etc.

### READING EXERCISE

**277.** 1. In rīpā flūminis jacēbam et aquam spectābam. Flūmen celeriter fluēbat. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbat. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parābant.

2. In rīpā flūminis jaceō et aquam spectō. Flūmen celeriter fluit. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormit. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore parant cēnam. Cēna mox

parāta erit, et māter mea mē vocābit. Tum frātrem ex somnō excitābō, et ad cēnam properābimus.

3. Frāter meus in rīpā flūminis jacēbat et aquam spectābat. Aqua celeriter fluēbat. Nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbam. Cēna ā mātre nostrā et sorōribus nostrīs sub arbore parābātur.

278. VOCABULARY

**arbor, arboris,** F., tree
**celeriter,** *adv.*, swiftly
**dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** sleep
**fluō, -ere, flūxī,** flow
**grāmen, grāminis,** N., grass
**jaceō, -ēre, -uī,** lie
**somnus, -ī,** M., sleep
**sub,** *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under

*a.* When used in expressions which denote motion **sub** takes the accusative; when used in expressions which denote rest or existence it takes the ablative.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**279.** 1. In rīpā flūminis puer dormiēba—. 2. Sonī ex silvā audiēba—. 3. Rōmānī castra sua mūrō mūniēba—. 4. Patriam nostram armīs dēfendēbā—(*subject "we"*). 5. Centuriō legiōnem in proeliō dūcēba—. 6. Etrūscī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēba—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**280.** 1. What is meant by *arboreal* animals? 2. What is a *dormant* condition? 3. Give a noun which is derived from **dormiō.** 4. What is the relation in meaning between *fluid* and **fluō**? 5. What is the literal meaning of *subscribe?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **spectō, jaceō, fluō,** and **veniō** in the imperfect indicative, active voice. 2. Conjugate **vocō, jubeō, cupiō,** and **mūniō** in the imperfect indicative, passive voice. 3. Decline **arbor** and **grāmen.**

## LESSON XLIV

### THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

#### USE OF THE REFLEXIVE

**281.** In the sentence *He defends himself* the object, *himself*, denotes the same person as the subject of the sentence. A pronoun which is thus used is called a *reflexive pronoun*. A reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

#### REFLEXIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

**282.** The reflexive pronoun meaning *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves* is as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| GEN. | suī | suī |
| DAT. | sibi | sibi |
| ACC. | sē *or* sēsē | sē *or* sēsē |
| ABL. | sē *or* sēsē | sē *or* sēsē |

*a.* The reflexives for *myself, yourself (yourselves), ourselves,* are the same as the words meaning *me, you, us,* in the different cases given above. **Mē nōn laudō,** *I do not praise myself:* **Tē nōn laudās,** *you do not praise yourself.* It is possible to tell from the general sense of the sentence whether one of these forms is to be translated as a reflexive or as a personal pronoun (*me, you,* etc.)

### READING EXERCISE

**283.** 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendunt, sed hostēs eōs premunt. Nisi auxilium dabitur, mox hostēs eōs superābunt. Mīlitēs putant sē in magnō perīculō esse. Sed cōnsul perīculum videt, et duās aliās legiōnēs mittit. Cōnsul dux bonus est, neque officium suum umquam neglegit.

2. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendēbant, sed hostēs eōs premēbant. Cōnsul dux bonus erat, neque officium neglegēbat. Mīlitēs perīculum vidēbant, sed putābant sē tūtōs esse quod duae aliae legiōnēs veniēbant.

3. Numerus noster nōn est magnus, sed fortiter nōs dēfendimus. Putāmus nōs tūtōs esse, quod ducem bonum habēmus.

### 284. VOCABULARY

**cōnsul, cōnsulis,** M., consul
**neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum,** neglect
**nisi,** *conj.*, unless
**numerus, -ī,** M., number
**officium, -ī,** N., duty
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressum,** press, press hard
**putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** think
**suī,** of himself, herself, itself, themselves
**umquam,** *adv.*, ever

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**285.** Translate into Latin: 1. Our allies were defending themselves, but they were demanding our aid. 2. My friend thinks himself to be in danger. 3. The leader of the enemy kills himself. 4. The boy wounds himself with a sword. 5. The boy defends himself bravely, but he is in great danger.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**286.** 1. What is a *consul*, as a modern government official? What was the nature of the duties of a Roman consul? 2. Give an adjective derived from the past participle of **neglegō.** 3. What is a *numeral?* 4. What is the meaning of the phrase *ex officio.*[1]

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write three English sentences, illustrating the use of the reflexive in the first, second, and third persons (one in each sentence). 2. Conjugate **premō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive. 3. Decline together the words for *this duty.*

[1] This phrase when used in English is pronounced *ex offishio.*

## FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

### 287. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXVI–XLIV

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| agmen, agminis | porta, -ae | excipiō, -ere |
| aqua, -ae | somnus, -ī | interficiō, -ere |
| arbor, arboris | sonus, -ī | jaceō, -ēre |
| centuriō, -ōnis | tenebrae, -ārum | jaciō, -ere |
| clāmor, clāmōris | vāllum, -ī | mittō, -ere |
| comes, comitis | vigil, vigilis | mūniō, -īre |
| cōnsul, cōnsulis | vīta, -ae | neglegō, -ere |
| fīnis, fīnis | | pōnō, -ere |
| grāmen, grāminis | alius, -a, -ud | premō, -ere |
| hasta, -ae | idōneus, -a, -um | prōcēdō, -ere |
| imperātor, -ōris | longus, -a, -um | prōspectō, -āre |
| iter, itineris | ulterior | putō, -āre |
| jaculum, -ī | duo | sciō, -īre |
| legiō, -ōnis | suī | tegō, -ere |
| moenia, -ium | | veniō, -īre |
| mōns, montis | appellō, -āre | vincō, -ere |
| nōmen, nōminis | audiō, -īre | |
| numerus, -ī | capiō, -ere | celeriter |
| nūntius, -ī | cupiō, -ere | graviter |
| officium, -ī | dēfendō, -ere | procul |
| pars, partis | dormiō, -īre | umquam |
| pēs, pedis | dūcō, -ere | nisi |

#### WORD STUDY—ADDITIONAL PREFIXES

**288.** The prepositions **ab** (*from*), **ad** (*to, toward*), **circum** (*around*), **trāns** (*across*), and some others have about the same meaning when used as prefixes as when used independently. Thus, **trānsportō** means *carry across* or *convey across*. As has been said before, some prefixes, however, take on slightly different meanings from those which they commonly have as separate words.

### THE PREFIX *COM-*

**289.** The preposition **cum** (*with*) appears as a prefix in the form **com-** (by assimilation **con-, col-, cor-, co-**). Its most frequent meaning as a prefix is *together*. Thus **conveniō** means *come together*. Sometimes the force of the prefix almost entirely disappears, leaving the word which it was used to form with almost the same meaning as the original word to which it was added. The word **comparō,** *prepare,* differs very little in meaning from the simple verb **parō,** to which **com-** was added. Occasionally the meaning of the original word is emphasized by the prefix. The English word *corrupt* is from a Latin word in which **com-** (becoming **cor-**) thus serves to emphasize the meaning of the original word.

### THE PREPOSITION *IN* AS A PREFIX

**290.** The preposition **in** (*in, on*) (sometimes becoming by assimilation **il-, im-, ir-**) appears in many words. Examples of its use are **indūcō, impōnō.** The English words *illuminate, illusion, illustrate, illustrious* have *ill-* at the beginning because the prefix **in** was joined to a word beginning with *l*, and *ll* resulted from the assimilation of *n* before *l*.

### THE INSEPARABLE PREFIX *IN-*

**291.** There is also an inseparable prefix **in-,** meaning *not*, which is an entirely different word from the preposition given above. It is found in many adjectives, such as **immortālis** (*not mortal*), **impotēns** (*not powerful*), **inimīcus** (*not friendly*). Its use in English words is illustrated by *incomplete, illegal, impossible, irregular.* This prefix is used in some English words which have not come directly from Latin.

### EXERCISE

Look up the words beginning with *in* on one or two pages of your English dictionary, and decide which are formed with the preposition **in** and which with the inseparable prefix **in-.**

## LESSON XLV

### THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

#### THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**292.** Verbs of the third and fourth conjugation are conjugated as follows in the future:

| ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Singular* |
| dūcam, *I shall lead* | dūcar, *I shall be led* |
| dūcēs, *you will lead* | dūcēris, *you will be led* |
| dūcet, *he will lead* | dūcētur, *he will be led* |
| *Plural* | *Plural* |
| dūcēmus, *we shall lead* | dūcēmur, *we shall be led* |
| dūcētis, *you will lead* | dūcēminī, *you will be led* |
| dūcent, *they will lead* | dūcentur, *they will be led* |

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| capiam | capiēmus | capiar | capiēmur |
| capiēs | capiētis | capiēris | capiēminī |
| capiet | capient | capiētur | capientur |

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| audiam | audiēmus | audiar | audiēmur |
| audiēs | audiētis | audiēris | audiēminī |
| audiet | audient | audiētur | audientur |

#### TENSE SIGN OF THE FUTURE

**293.** We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. The **ē** becomes short before the personal endings **-t, -nt,** and **-ntur.**

PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**294.**

| | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---|---|---|
| I. | portāre, *to carry* | portārī, *to be carried* |
| II. | monēre, *to warn* | monērī, *to be warned* |
| III. | dūcere, *to lead* | dūcī, *to be led* |
| | capere, *to take* | capī, *to be taken* |
| IV. | audīre, *to hear* | audīrī, *to be heard* |

*a*. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final **e** of the active endings (**-āre, -ēre, -īre**) is replaced by **ī** in the passive, while in the third conjugation, the entire ending (**-ere**) is replaced by **-ī**.

## READING EXERCISE: *LOCUS CASTRŌRUM*

**295.** Castra nostra nōn longē ab illō monte pōnēmus. Castra vāllō mūniēmus, quod hostēs nōn longē absunt. Castella erunt, et vigilēs ex castellīs spectābunt. Arma parāta habēbimus, et sī hostēs ad castra venient, eōs repellēmus. Rēx hostium cōpiās suās dūcit, et magnum numerum sociōrum habet. Hī sociī sunt barbarī. Explōrātōrēs nostrī in silvā latent et iter hostium spectant. Inter castra nostra et hostēs est flūmen altum, et hostēs nūllās nāvēs habent. Sed nōn longē ab hōc locō est pōns sublicius in flūmine. Mīlitēs nostrī hunc pontem fēcērunt, sed posteā ex eō locō repulsī sunt, et hostēs nunc ad rīpam nostram appropinquant.

## 296. VOCABULARY

**castellum, -ī,** N., fort, redoubt
**explōrātor, -ōris,** M., scout
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum,** make, do
**lateō, -ēre, -uī,** lurk, be concealed
**nāvis, nāvis, -ium,** F., ship, boat
**pōns, pontis, -ium,** M., bridge
**posteā,** *adv.*, afterwards
**repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum,** drive back, repel
**sublicius, -a, -um,** resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**297.** 1. Explōrātōrēs cōpiās nostrās per silvam dūc— (*will lead*). 2. Multī mīlitēs in proeliō interfici— (*will be killed*). 3. Sonum proeliī ex hōc locō audi— (*we shall hear*). 4. Nūntius ad oppidum statim mitt—. 5. Legiō castra fortiter dēfend— (*will defend*), et hostēs repell— (*will be driven back*). 6. Cōnsul perīculum vidē— (*will see*), sed officium suum nōn negleg— (*will not neglect*).

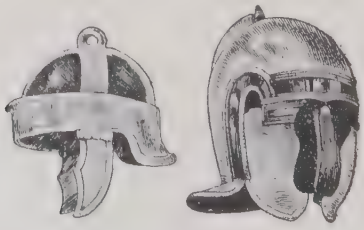
### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**298.** 1. What is a *castle?* What do you suppose was originally the chief characteristic of such a building? 2. What is *latent* heat? 3. Give an adjective and a verb which are derived from **nāvis.** 4. What is the difference between the meaning of *repellent* and *repulsive?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person singular, active voice, of the verbs **habeō, faciō,** and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future. 2. Give the third person plural, passive voice, of the verbs **laudō, dūcō, cupiō,** and **mūniō,** in the present, imperfect, and future. 3. Give the present passive infinitives, with their meanings, of **laudō, moveō, mittō, mūniō.**



ROMAN HELMETS

## LESSON XLVI

### RELATIVE PRONOUN

#### FORMS OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**299.** The forms of the Latin relative pronoun, meaning *who, which, that,* or *what* are as follows:

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| Nom. | quī | quae | quod | quī | quae | quae |
| Gen. | cujus | cujus | cujus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat. | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| Acc. | quem | quam | quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| Abl. | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

*a.* The genitives **cujus, quōrum, quārum** are translated *whose, of whom,* or *of which,* as the sense requires.

#### USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**300.** The relative pronoun is used to connect a subordinate clause to some noun or pronoun in the main clause, while the interrogative pronoun, also translated by *who, which,* or *what,* introduces a question. In the sentence *The man who lives in that house is my uncle,* the clause *who lives in that house* is connected with *man* by *who;* in this sentence, therefore, *who* is a relative pronoun.

#### AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**301.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

**Homō quem vidēs amīcus meus est,** *the man whom you see is my friend.*

### READING EXERCISE: *URBS RŌMA*

**302.** Rōma est magna urbs Italiae. Flūmen Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. Antīquitus urbs tōta erat in ūnā rīpā flūminis, et trāns flūmen erant agrī et tēcta agricolārum. Sed nunc aedificia in utrīsque partibus vidēmus. Intrā mūrōs sunt septem collēs. Ōlim Rōma erat parvum oppidum, et ūnum collem habēbat. Is collis, in quō prīma urbs erat, nōmen Palātium habet. In Palātiō erant tēcta in quibus rēgēs et multī virī clārī habitābant.

Magna urbs quam vidēs est Rōma. Eī quī in eā urbe habitant sunt Rōmānī. Flūmen quod urbem in duās partēs dīvidit est Tiberis. Collis in quō rēgēs et virī clārī tēcta habēbant est Palātium. Hominēs quōrum agrī et casae antīquitus trāns flūmen erant interdum cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. Ille rēx cujus mīlitēs prīmī Rōmam cēpērunt erat barbarus. Sed posteā barbarī superātī sunt ā Rōmānīs.

### 303. VOCABULARY

**antīquitus,** *adv.*, long ago, in former times
**dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum,** divide
**intrā,** *prep. with acc.*, within
**Palātium, -ī,** N., the Palatine Hill
**prīmus, -ā, -um,** first
**quī, quae, quod,** who, which, that
**septem,** seven
**Tiberis, Tiberis,** M., the Tiber (*river*)
**ūnus, -a, -um,** one
**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** each (*of two*)

*a.* The genitive and dative of **ūnus** and **uterque** are not formed in accordance with the regular declension of adjectives. They do not appear in the exercises of this book.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**304.** Give the form of the Latin relative pronoun for the italicized words in the following exercise, then translate

the sentences into Latin: 1. That city *which* you see is Rome. 2. The river *which* divides it into two parts is the Tiber. 3. The town *to which* Romulus gave a name was small. 4. The man *whose* house you see is my brother. 5. The messengers *whom* the general sent have been captured.

#### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**305.** 1. What is meant by *antiquity?* 2. Give three English derivatives from the participial stem of **dividō.** 3. What are *intra-mural* athletics? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *palace.* 5. What is the meaning of *quorum* as an English word?

---

#### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases, putting the nouns in the nominative: *the boy who, the boy whom, the girl who, the girl whom, the gift which; the soldiers whom, the soldiers of whom, the cities of which; the town in which, the towns in which, the towns which.*

---

## LESSON XLVII

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

#### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

**306.** We have previously seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives which are declined like nouns of the third declension. It is, of course, to be understood that an adjective is not necessarily of the same declension as the noun which it modifies.

There are three classes of third declension adjectives. Those with two endings in the nominative singular are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| Nom. | omnis | omne | omnēs | omnia |
| Gen. | omnis | omnis | omnium | omnium |
| Dat. | omnī | omnī | omnibus | omnibus |
| Acc. | omnem | omne | omnīs, -ēs | omnia |
| Abl. | omnī | omnī | omnibus | omnibus |

*a.* In the masculine and feminine these adjectives are declined like **collis,** except that the ablative singular ends in **-ī.** The neuter is declined like **īnsigne.**

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES WITH THREE ENDINGS

**307.**

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
| Nom. | ācer | ācris | ācre |
| Gen. | ācris | ācris | ācris |
| Dat. | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī |
| Acc. | ācrem | ācrem | ācre |
| Abl. | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī |
| | *Plural* | | |
| Nom. | ācrēs | ācrēs | ācria |
| Gen. | ācrium | ācrium | ācrium |
| Dat. | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |
| Acc. | ācrīs, -ēs | ācrīs, -ēs | ācria |
| Abl. | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |

*a.* There are not many adjectives of this class. They differ from those of two endings only in the nominative singular.

READING EXERCISE

**308.** 1. Hī barbarī sunt ācrēs, sed nōn mīlitēs bonī sunt, quod imperāta non faciunt. Mīles bonus nōn sōlum fortis est, sed etiam imperāta facit. Victōria facilis erit, quod mīlitēs nostrī ducem bonum habent, cujus imperāta facient.

2. Omnēs quī bene labōrant praemia accipient. Pecūnia eīs dabitur, et laudābuntur. Eī quī male labōrant nūlla praemia accipient, neque laudābuntur.

3. Frāter meus nox in Americam ex Eurōpā perveniet. Quandō frātrēs tuī pervenient?

Frātrēs meī jam in Americā sunt.

**309.** VOCABULARY

**accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** accept, receive
**ācer, ācris, ācre,** fierce, eager
**facilis, -e,** easy
**fortis, -e,** brave
**imperātum, -ī,** N., command
**jam,** *adv.*, now, already
**omnis, -e,** all
**perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** arrive
**quandō,** *adv.*, when
**victōria, -ae,** F., victory

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**310.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The brave lieutenant will lead the legion to the enemy's camp. 2. All the boys are working in the fields today. 3. Those victories were not easy. 4. My brother, who came from Europe, gave me a reward. 5. The book which you have is mine.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**311.** 1. Give a noun derived from **facilis.** 2. What is meant by *fortitude?* 3. Give the meanings of *omnipotent, omniscient,* and *omnipresent.* 4. Complete the following formula: *victory* : **victōria** : : *misery* : *x*.

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **lēgātus fortis.** 2. Decline together **victōria facilis.** 3. Give the Latin for the following, putting the nouns in the nominative: *the leader whom, the leader whose, the leaders whose; the consul by whom, the consuls by whom, the consul to whom (as indirect object); the ship in which, the ships in which, the ship from which.*

## LESSON XLVIII

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

**312.** Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

| | **fēlīx,** *fortunate* | | **potēns,** *powerful* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular* | | |
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| Nom. | fēlīx | fēlīx | potēns | potēns |
| Gen. | fēlīcis | fēlīcis | potentis | potentis |
| Dat. | fēlīcī | fēlīcī | potentī | potentī |
| Acc. | fēlīcem | fēlīx | potentem | potēns |
| Abl. | fēlīcī | fēlīcī | potentī, -e | potentī, -e |
| | | *Plural* | | |
| Nom. | fēlīcēs | fēlīcia | potentēs | potentia |
| Gen. | fēlīcium | fēlīcium | potentium | potentium |
| Dat. | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | potentibus | potentibus |
| Acc. | fēlīcīs, -ēs | fēlīcia | potentīs, -ēs | potentia |
| Abl. | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | potentibus | potentibus |

*a.* The neuter is given separately because it differs from the masculine and feminine in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

### READING EXERCISE

**313.** Is homō erat rēx potēns. Nunc exul est, et paucōs amīcōs habet. Longē ā patriā suā habitat. Cīvēs eum in patriā esse nōn sinunt, et fīliī ejus in vincula conjectī sunt. Rēx nōn erat sapiēns, et cīvēs sunt fēlīcēs quod exul est. Comitēs ejus eum rēgem appellant, sed rēx sine potentiā est.

Multī eōrum quī ōlim rēgēs in Eurōpā erant nunc sunt exulēs. At in patriā nostrā fuit nūllus rēx. In hāc terrā

populus regit. Gentēs Americae fēlicēs sunt quod rēgēs neque habent neque dēsīderant.

**314.** VOCABULARY

**at**, *conj.*, but
**conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum**, throw
**exul, exulis**, M., exile
**fēlīx**, *gen.* **fēlīcis**, happy
**potēns**, *gen.* **potentis**, powerful
**potentia, -ae**, F., power
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum**, rule
**sapiēns**, *gen.*, **sapientis**, wise
**sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm**, allow
**vinculum, -ī**, N., chain

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**315.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Your friend is wise, and he gives you good advice (**cōnsilium**). 2. We have powerful allies, who will give us help. 3. We are happy because we have many friends. 4. Wise men did not expect an easy victory in that war. 5. The consul is the friend of all the citizens who love their (native) country. 6. The boy was brave, but he was not strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**316.** 1. Find from a dictionary the source of *conjecture*. 2. What is meant by *felicity?* 3. What is a *potent* argument? 4. What is a *regent?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **terra fēlix**. 2. Decline together **fēmina sapiēns**. 3. Give the ablative singular of the following adjectives in all genders: **bonus, miser, fortis, omnis**. 4. Rewrite the first two sentences of section **313**, changing the subjects to the plural.

## LESSON XLIX

### FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

**317.** In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in **-ūs.** The nominative singular ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

| | **exercitus,** M., *army* | | | **cornū,** N., *horn* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular* | | | |
| | | *Endings* | | | *Endings* |
| NOM. | exercitus | **-us** | NOM. | cornū | **-ū** |
| GEN. | exercitūs | **-ūs** | GEN. | cornūs | **-ūs** |
| DAT. | exercituī, -ū | **-uī, -ū** | DAT. | cornū | **-ū** |
| ACC. | exercitum | **-um** | ACC. | cornū | **-ū** |
| ABL. | exercitū | **-ū** | ABL. | cornū | **-ū** |
| | | *Plural* | | | |
| NOM. | exercitūs | **-ūs** | NOM. | cornua | **-ua** |
| GEN. | exercituum | **-uum** | GEN. | cornuum | **-uum** |
| DAT. | exercitibus | **-ibus** | DAT. | cornibus | **-ibus** |
| ACC. | exercitūs | **-ūs** | ACC. | cornua | **-ua** |
| ABL. | exercitibus | **-ibus** | ABL. | cornibus | **-ibus** |

*a.* The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns end in **-ubus.**

### READING EXERCISE: *RŌMA DĒFENDITUR*

**318.** Rēx quī ex urbe expulsus est cum exercitū hostium hūc venit (*is coming*). Urbem capere et multōs occīdere cupit. Multōs in vincula conjicere etiam cupit. Impetum facere nunc parat. Nōbilēs quī eum ex urbe expulērunt perīculum suum magnum esse sciunt, sed nōn ignāvī sunt, et sē dēfendere parant. Nūntiī in omnēs partēs missī sunt, et

vigilēs in mūrō sunt. Rēx cum sociīs suīs nunc in cōnspectū est. Hī mox usque ad rīpam ulteriōrem flūminis venient. Omnēs cīvēs cum armīs convenīre incipiunt. Cōnsulēs adsunt, et omnēs prō patriā pugnāre parātī sunt. Fortis Horātius inter cīvēs pugnat. Posteā dē fortī Horātiō audiēmus.

### 319. VOCABULARY

**cōnspectus, -ūs,** M., sight
**conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** assemble
**exercitus, -ūs,** M., army
**Horātius, -ī,** M., Horatius
**impetus, -ūs,** M., attack
**incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** begin
**nōbilis, -e,** noble; M. *plur.*, the nobles
**occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** kill
**usque,** *adv.*, all the way, as far as

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**320.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The consul was the leader of the army which captured the city. 2. The centurion was killed in sight of the legion. 3. The barbarians made many attacks on our camp, but they were repulsed. 4. Our (native) country has always been safe without large armies. 5. But our citizens ought to be prepared to defend their (native) country.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**321.** 1. What is a *convention?* 2. What is the meaning of *impetus* as an English word? 3. What is the *incipient* stage of a fever? 4. What is the meaning of *inception?*

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **exercitus noster.** 2. Decline together **cornū longum.** 3. Give the ablative singular of **mūrus, cōnspectus, flūmen, īnsigne.** 4. Write the third person singular of **occīdō,** active and passive, in all the tenses which have been learned.

## LESSON L

### CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

#### PRESENT SYSTEM OF *EŌ*

**322.** The irregular verb **eō,** *go,* is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

| PRESENT | IMPERFECT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Singular* | *Singular* |
| ′eō | ībam | ībō |
| īs | ībās | ībis |
| it | ībat | ībit |
| *Plural* | *Plural* | *Plural* |
| īmus | ībāmus | ībimus |
| ītis | ībātis | ībitis |
| eunt | ībant | ībunt |

*a.* The principal parts are **eō, īre, iī** or **īvī, itum.** The perfect is formed as in regular verbs: **iī (īvī),** etc. The second person of the perfect is **īstī** in the singular and **īstis** in the plural. The third person singular is **iit.**

#### COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ*

**323.** There are many compounds of **eō,** such as **exeō,** *go out,* **redeō,** *go back,* **trānseō,** *go across.* They are conjugated like **eō,** with the syllable **ex-, red-, trāns-,** etc., prefixed. Thus, **exeō, exīs, exit,** etc.

#### READING EXERCISE

**324.** 1. Puer sērō ad tēctum redībat, et sōlus per silvam ībat. In omnēs partēs spectābat, quod perīculum timēbat. Erat nūllum perīculum in silvā, sed puer erat parvus, et nōn saepe longē ā tēctō ībat sine patre aut mātre aut frātribus. Tandem lūcem vīdit, et currere coepit. Lūx in fenestrā erat, et

māter puerum expectābat. Māter laeta erat quod puer tūtus redībat.

2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum iter vertērunt, et nunc flūmen trānseunt quod inter agrōs sociōrum suōrum et hostēs fluit. Sed tamen paucī mīlitēs in hōc locō relictī sunt, quī oppida sociōrum dēfendunt. Post proelium tōtus exercitus hūc redībit.

**325.** VOCABULARY

**coepī, coepisse,** began
**currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum,** run
**eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum,** go
**redeō, -īre, -iī -itum,** return
**relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum,** leave
**sērō,** *adv.*, late, too late
**tamen,** *adv.*, still, nevertheless
**tandem,** *adv.*, at length
**trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** cross
**vertō, -ere, vertī, versum,** turn

*a.* The verb **coepī** is commonly used instead of the perfect of **incipiō.**

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**326.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I go because my (native) country calls me. 2. We have turned our course (march), and we shall cross the river. 3. All the soldiers who have returned are now in camp. 4. We were going through the forest in the evening with your father. 5. The small boy began to run, because he was afraid (he feared). 6. A few will cross the river which is behind the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**327.** 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **currō** and the noun *current* (i. e. the *current* of the river)? 2. What is the meaning of *relinquish?* 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *relic.* 4. What is a *tandem* team? 5. What is meant by goods in *transit*? 6. What is a new *version* of a story?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **veniō** and **exeō** in the future. 2. Give the third person singular of **sedeō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect tenses. 3. Rewrite the last two sentences of 1, section **324**, changing the verbs to the future tense. 4. Name the tense of each verb found in paragraph 2 of section **324**.

---

## LESSON LI

### EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

#### THE ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

**328.** The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

***Eō annō* pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit,** *my father built a new house that year.*

*a.* Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year*; *on the same day*; *at the appointed hour*.

#### THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

**329.** In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues. Thus, *We stayed in the country three days.* We may also say *We stayed in the country for three days.* The expressions *three days* in the first sentence, and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing. In Latin a word which is thus used to denote duration of time is put in the accusative without a preposition. ***Multās hōrās* in īnsulā mānsī,** *I remained on the island many hours* (or *for many hours*).

*a.* The ablative of time answers the question *When?* The accusative of duration answers the question *How long?*

### READING EXERCISE: *VIGILIAE CASTRŌRUM*

**330.** Apud Rōmānōs in bellō nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvidēbātur. Duae vigiliae ante mediam noctem erant et duae post mediam noctem. Prīmā vigiliā mīlitēs, quī vigilēs appellābantur, circum vāllum castrōrum dispōnēbantur. Hī in suīs locīs usque ad fīnem prīmae vigiliae manēbant, tum ad tabernācula discēdēbant, et aliī vigilēs succēdēbant. Ita castra tōtam noctem ā vigilibus custōdiēbantur. Prīmā lūce mīlitēs ē somnō excitābantur. Hostēs nōn facile castra Rōmāna nocte expugnābant, quae nūllō tempore erant sine vigilibus. Barbarī castra sua ita nōn custōdiēbant, et castra eōrum interdum ab hostibus noctū oppugnāta sunt et capta (sunt).

**331.** VOCABULARY

**apud,** *prep. with acc.*, among, with
**custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** guard
**discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** withdraw, go away
**dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** arrange, station
**quattuor,** four
**succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** succeed, take the place of
**tempus, temporis,** N., time
**vigilia, -ae,** F., watch

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**332.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. In the first watch the enemy made an attack on the redoubt. 2. Your sister remained in Europe two years. 3. At daybreak we returned to the town with the army. 4. We walked all night, and we are tired.

#### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**333.** 1. What is a *temporary* appointment? 2. What is a *custodian?* Find another noun which is derived from

**custōdiō.** 3. What two meanings, apparently very different, does the English word *succeed* have? Give a noun which is derived from the past participle of **succēdō.** 4. What is the meaning of the English word *vigil?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out the ablatives and the accusatives in section **330** which express ideas of time. 2. Write an English sentence containing an expression of time at which, and a sentence containing an expression of duration of time.

VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

## SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

**334.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLV–LI

castellum, -ī
cōnspectus, -ūs
exercitus, -ūs
explōrātor, -ōris
exul, exulis
imperātum, -ī
impetus, -ūs
nāvis, nāvis
pōns, pontis
potentia, -ae
tempus, temporis
victōria, -ae
vigilia, -ae
vinculum, -ī

ācer, ācris, ācre
facilis, -e
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis
fortis, -e
nōbilis, -e
omnis, -e
potēns, *gen.* potentis
prīmus, -a, -um
sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
sublicius, -a, -um
tantus, -a, -um
quattuor
septem
quī, quae, quod
uterque, -traque, -trumque

accipiō, -ere
coepī
conjiciō, -ere
conveniō, -īre
currō, -ere
custōdiō, -īre
dīvidō, -ere
eō, īre
faciō, -ere
incipiō, -ere
lateō, -ēre
occīdō, -ere
redeō, -īre
regō, -ere
relinquō, -ere
repellō, -ere
sinō, -ere
succēdō, -ere
trānseō, -īre
vertō, -ere

antīquitus
jam
posteā
quandō
sērō
tamen
tandem
usque
apud
intrā

### WORD STUDY: LATIN SUFFIXES

**335.** A word element consisting of one or more letters or syllables joined to the end of a word is called a suffix.

It is usually difficult to give exact meanings to Latin suffixes. Often we can only say that they are used in forming certain classes of words. They differ from prefixes in that they are not usually added to whole words to form new ones. Instead, words with which suffixes are employed are usually altered by the loss or change of one or more letters before the suffix. Thus, **cīvitās** is derived from **cīvis,** but the ending **-tās** instead of being added to **cīvis** is used with **cīvi—.**

**336.** Among the suffixes which are used in forming nouns are **-ia, -tia, -ium,** (**-t**)**iō, -dō, -tās, -tūs, -tus** (**-sus**).

Examples of their use in forming nouns from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs are the following:

| (*From nouns*) | (*From adjectives*) | (*From verbs*) |
|---|---|---|
| cīvitās (cīvis) | altitūdō (altus) | adventus (adveniō) |
| servitūs (servus) | amīcitia (amīcus) | imperium (imperō) |
| virtūs (vir) | celeritās (celer) | oppugnātiō (oppugnō) |

### CHANGES IN SPELLING

**337.** There are numerous English adjectives and nouns which end in *-ant* or *-ent,* such as *independent, patient, tenant, apparent, constant.* Most of these words come from Latin present participles, which have stems ending in **-ant, -ent,** or **-ient.** These different endings all became *-ant* in French, and hence we have some words, as for example *tenant,* with the ending *-ant,* although the form of the Latin word from which it comes would lead us to expect the ending *-ent.* In many cases, however, we have the ending which we should expect from the spelling of the original Latin word. All derivatives of this class which have come from verbs of the first conjugation end in *-ant.*

### EXERCISE

Decide whether derivatives from the verbs **cōnstāre, mīlitāre, vigilāre,** will end in *-ent* or *-ant*. Write English sentences illustrating the use of the words *facility, fortitude, relinquish, custodian.*

---

## LESSON LII

### THE IMPERATIVE

#### USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

**338.** The imperative mood is used to express commands. Thus, *Close the door; Wait till I come.* The verbs *close* and *wait* are in the imperative mood.

#### THE IMPERATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**339.** The present active imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations in Latin is as follows:

| | I | II |
|---|---|---|
| SING. | portā, *carry* (said to one person) | monē |
| PLUR. | portāte, *carry* (said to more than one) | monēte |

| | III | | IV |
|---|---|---|---|
| SING. | mitte | cape | audī |
| PLUR. | mittite | capite | audīte |

*a.* The verbs **dīcō, dūcō,** and **faciō** have the irregular forms **dīc, dūc,** and **fac** in the singular of the present active imperative. In the plural they are regular.

*b.* The verb **dō** differs from other first conjugation verbs in that the **a** is short in the plural imperative **date.** The singular, **dā,** is regular.

#### THE IMPERATIVES OF *EŌ* AND *SUM*

**340.** The imperatives of **eō** are **ī** (*singular*), and **īte** (*plural*).

Compounds of **eō** form their imperatives like the simple verb. Thus **trānsī, trānsīte,** etc.

The imperatives of **sum** are **es** (*singular*) and **este** (*plural*).

### READING EXERCISE: *ETRŪSCĪ RŌMAM CAPERE TEMPTANT*

**341.** "Gladiōs, mīlitēs, sūmite, et in Rōmānōs impetum facite. Nam pontem sublicium frangere cupiunt, quī est inter nōs et urbem eōrum. Secūrēs habent et hīs secūribus lignum caedunt. Dux eōrum est fortis Horātius, quī inter prīmōs verbera dūra dat. Eum et comitēs ejus ex ponte pellite. Nōlīte sinere Rōmānōs pontem ita frangere." Ita dux Etrūscōrum dīxit, quī Rōmam capere et rēgem Rōmānum restituere cupiēbat. Is rēx Rōmānus erat exul. Rōmānī tum cōnsulēs habēbant, quī exercitum dūcēbant et urbem regēbant. Ūnus ex hīs cōnsulibus tum erat ignāvus, neque auxilium dabat. Sed omnēs cīvēs fortiter urbem dēfendērunt. Pōns frāctus est, et urbs ita servāta est.

### 342. VOCABULARY

**caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum,** cut
**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum,** say
**dūrus, -a, -um,** hard
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break
**nōlīte,** be unwilling, do not
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum,** drive
**restituō, -ere, restituī, restitūtum,** restore
**secūris, secūris, -ium,** F., ax
**sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,** take, assume
**verbera, -um,** N. *pl.*, blows (*found also in a few singular forms*)

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**343.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Give your book to the boy who stands behind you. 2. Send money at once, if you are my friend. 3. Soldiers, break down the bridge with axes. 4. Citizens, defend your houses bravely. 5. Warn those men who are in danger. 6. Come at once to the river, boys.

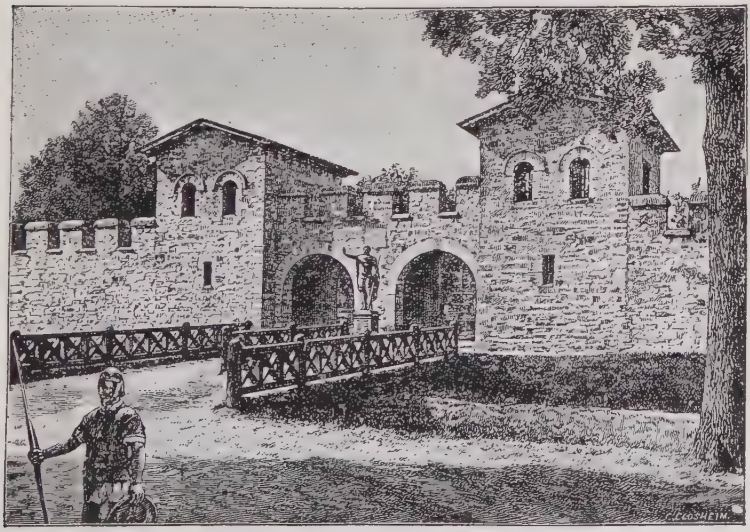
### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**344.** 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **dīcō** and *dictionary?* What is meant by *diction?* 2. Give a noun which is derived from the past participle of **frangō.** 3. What is the difference between *repel* and *propel?* 4. What preposition is combined with **sūmō** to form the word from which *assume* is derived? 5. What is meant by the expression "to make *restitution*"?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present active imperatives, singular and plural, of **ambulō, jubeō, dēfendō, cupiō, mūniō.** 2. Conjugate **dēfendō** in the present and future indicative, active and passive. 3. Explain and illustrate the difference between the use of the accusative and the ablative in expressions of time.



ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP

## LESSON LIII

### CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

**345.** The verb **possum,** *I am able* or *I can,* is irregular. It is a compound of **sum** and the adjective **potis,** *able.* The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| possum, *I am able,* or *I can* | possumus, *we are able,* etc. |
| potes, *you are able, you can* | potestis, *you are able,* etc. |
| potest, *he is able, he can* | possunt, *they are able,* etc. |

IMPERFECT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| poteram, *I was able, I could* | poterāmus, *we were able,* etc. |
| poterās, *you were able,* etc. | poterātis, *you were able,* etc. |
| poterat, *he was able,* etc. | poterant, *they were able,* etc. |

FUTURE

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| poterō, *I shall be able* | poterimus, *we shall be able* |
| poteris, *you will be able* | poteritis, *you will be able* |
| poterit, *he will be able* | poterunt, *they will be able* |

*a.* The principal parts are **possum, posse, potuī.** The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: **potuī, potuistī,** etc.

### READING EXERCISE: *CASTRA RŌMĀNA OPPUGNANTUR*

**346.** Hostēs castra Rōmāna paene circumvēnērunt. Rōmānī ex castrīs effugere nōn possunt, sed fortiter sē dēfendent. Herī duo centuriōnēs ex portā exiērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Ūnus vulnerātus in castra sine auxiliō

sē recipere nōn poterat. Sed alter hostēs reppulit et comitem suum servāvit. Signifer, vir fortis, quī erat in vāllō, interfectus est. Sociī auxilium mīsērunt, et Rōmānī eās cōpiās expectant. Sī mox venient, hostēs castra nōn capient. Rōmānī enim ex castrīs impetum in hostēs facient, et sociī ā tergō eōs oppugnābunt. Hostēs pellentur, et castra servābuntur.

347. VOCABULARY

**alter, altera, alterum,** the other
**circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** surround
**effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī,** escape
**enim,** *conj.*, for (*never stands first in its clause*)
**exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go out
**paene,** *adv.*, almost
**possum, posse, potuī,** am able
**recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** take back; **sē recipere,** withdraw, retreat
**signifer, signiferī,** M., standard-bearer
**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** wound

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**348.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I cannot hear you from this place. 2. We were able to cross the river, but we were not able to capture the camp. 3. The army of the enemy could not escape. 4. The citizens who have arms will be able to defend themselves. 5. Why do you not go? Answer me (*indirect object*) at once. 6. The sound of the horses' feet in the street can be heard from this place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**349.** 1. What is an *alternative* route? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *circumvent*. 3. What is an *exit?* 4. What is the meaning of the statement "He was the *recipient* of much praise"? 5. What is a *vulnerable* place?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **possum** in the perfect, giving the meaning of each form. 2. Give the third person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied. 3. Rewrite the first sentence in section **346**, changing the verb to the passive voice. 4. Conjugate **exeō** in the future indicative.

---

## LESSON LIV

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

#### THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

**350.** Thus far, the personal pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, etc., as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the personal endings of the verb, **-ō, -s, -t,** etc. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin as in English.

The other cases than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive of the pronouns of the first and second persons is not used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester** take the place of the genitive in expressions of possession. The use of the genitive singular is not common.

#### DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

**351.** The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, meaning *I* and *you*, are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | ego | nōs | tū | vōs |
| Gen. | meī | nostrum, nostrī | tuī | vestrum, vestrī |
| Dat. | mihi | nōbīs | tibi | vōbīs |
| Acc. | mē | nōs | tē | vōs |
| Abl. | mē | nōbīs | tē | vōbīs |

*a.* The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used in phrases meaning *part of us, many of us, part of you,* and the like. A genitive of this sort is called a *genitive of the whole.* In the phrase **pars mīlitum,** the noun **mīlitum** is a genitive of the whole.

*b.* The forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with nouns which denote action or feeling, to denote the person or thing which stands as object of the action or feeling expressed. They are not employed in the exercises of this book.

*c.* When the ablative forms **mē, tē, nōbīs, vōbīs,** and also **sē** (*Section* **281**) are used as objects of the preposition **cum,** they have **cum** attached as a final syllable: thus, **mēcum,** *with me,* **tēcum,** *with you,* **nōbīscum,** *with us,* etc.

### PERSONAL PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

**352.** As has been previously seen, the demonstrative **is, ea, id** serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they,* etc. The nominative may be used for emphasis or when it is needed to make the meaning clear. Sometimes the forms of **hic** and **ille** are used instead of **is** as the pronoun of the third person.

### READING EXERCISE: *RŌMĀNUS ET GALLUS*

**353.** 1. (*The Roman speaks.*) Ego Rōmānus sum, tū Gallus es. Rōmānī cum Gallīs bellum gerunt, et exercitus noster agrōs Galliae vāstat. Sed ego numquam ā tē injūriam accēpī, et nunc mēcum in urbe nostrā tūtō manēre potes. Post bellum in patriam tuam redīre poteris, et tēcum ībō.

2. (*The Gaul speaks.*) Sed uter patriam suam magis amat, is quī in terrā hostium tūtus manet, an is quī in bellō pugnat et tēcta et agrōs cīvium suōrum dēfendit? Ego tēcum tūtus esse possum, sed amīcī meī in perīculō sunt, et in terrā hostium cum honōre manēre nōn possum. Statim redīre et prō patriā pugnāre cupiō. Amīcī meī mē ignāvum esse putābunt sī

in urbe tuā manēbō. Cum pāx inter Galliam et Rōmam erit, iterum ego et tū amīcī erimus.

**354.** VOCABULARY

**an,** *conj.*, or
**ego,** I
**honor, -ōris,** M., honor
**injūria, -ae,** F., injury, injustice
**magis,** *adv.*, more
**numquam,** *adv.*, never
**pāx, pācis,** F., peace
**tū,** you (*of one person*)
**tūtō,** *adv.*, safely
**uter, -tra, -trum,** which (*of two*)?

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**355.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I shall go to (**in**) Europe; you will remain in America. 2. We are good citizens; you are enemies of the country (*not* **terra**). 3. Come with me, and I will show you a beautiful picture. 4. Many of us go to the mountains or (**aut**) to the sea in summer. 5. We have not been helped by you (*plural*), and we shall not help you. 6. Who can carry these books?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**356.** 1. What sort of person is an *egotist?* 2. Can you find another word besides *honor* which has the same spelling in English and in Latin? 3. Give an adjective which is derived from **injūria.** 4. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *nostrum* as an English word.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *us* (*direct object*), *by us, by you* (*plural*), *to you* (*plural, indirect object*), *to us* (*indirect object*), *to me* (*indirect object*). 2. Give the first person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied. 3. Give the present active imperatives of **putō, maneō,** and **accipiō.**

# LESSON LV

## PAST PERFECT

### MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

**357.** The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the English auxiliary verb *had*. Thus, *I had carried, you had carried,* etc.

### FORMATION OF THE LATIN PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

**358.** The past perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-erā-,** which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is short before the endings **-m, -t,** and **-nt.**

*Singular*

| | |
|---|---|
| portāveram, *I had carried* | monueram, *I had warned* |
| portāverās, *you had carried* | monuerās, *you had warned* |
| portāverat, *he had carried* | monuerat, *he had warned* |

*Plural*

| | |
|---|---|
| portāverāmus, *we had carried* | monuerāmus, *we had warned* |
| portāverātis, *you had carried* | monuerātis, *you had warned* |
| portāverant, *they had carried* | monuerant, *they had warned* |

### THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

**359.** The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle with the imperfect tense of **sum.**

*Singular*

| | |
|---|---|
| portātus eram, *I had been carried* | monitus eram |
| portātus erās, *you had been carried* | monitus erās |
| portātus erat, *he had been carried* | monitus erat |

*Plural*

| | |
|---|---|
| portātī erāmus, *we had been carried* | monitī erāmus |
| portātī erātis, *you had been carried* | monitī erātis |
| portātī erant, *they had been carried* | monitī erant |

### READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS REPELLUNTUR*

**360.** Ipse imperātor hostium illum locum cum multīs mīlitibus tenēbat. Parvum agmen circum montem mīserat, et hoc agmen ad castra nostra appropinquābat. Sōl surgere incipiēbat, sed vigilēs loca sua nōndum relīquerant. Mīlitēs nostrī, quī excitātī erant, signa et arma hostium vīdērunt, et multī celeriter ad vāllum cucurrērunt. Aliī portās aperuērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Hostēs nōn diū restitērunt, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Castra sua petiērunt, sed multī in fugā interfectī sunt.

**361.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum,** open | **resistō, -sistere, -stitī,** resist |
| **fuga, -ae,** F., flight | **sōl, sōlis,** M., sun |
| **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** self | **surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum,** rise |
| **nōndum,** *adv.*, not yet | **teneō, -ēre, -uī,** hold |
| **petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** seek, ask for | |

*a.* **Ipse** is declined exactly like **ille** (section **149**) except that the neuter singular ends in **-um** in the nominative and accusative.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**362.** 1. Saepe in eō locō sine perīculō ambulāverā— (*subject "we"*). 2. Cūr puerōs nōn monuerā— (*subject "you"*) quī tēcum erant. 3. Legiō diū restitera—, et multī interfectī erant. 4. Quis librum vīdit quem in hōc locō relīqu— (*subject "I"*). 5. Imperātor cum exercitū vēnera—, et urbs tūta erat.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**363.** 1. What is a *petition?* What is a *partition?* 2. What is a *solar* eclipse? 3. What are *surging* waves? 4. What is a *tenacious* memory?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **possum** in the past perfect indicative. 2. Give the third person singular of **petō** in the active and passive indicative. 3. Decline together **ipse dux.** 4. Conjugate **surgō** in the perfect and past perfect, active voice.

---

## LESSON LVI

### DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

**364.** The declension of **īdem,** *same,* is as follows:

*Singular*

| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | īdem | eadem | idem |
| Gen. | ejusdem | ejusdem | ejusdem |
| Dat. | eīdem | eīdem | eīdem |
| Acc. | eundem | eandem | idem |
| Abl. | eōdem | eādem | eōdem |

*Plural*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | īdem *or* eīdem | eaedem | eadem |
| Gen. | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| Dat. | eīsdem *or* īsdem | eīsdem *or* īsdem | eīsdem *or* īsdem |
| Acc. | eōsdem | eāsdem | eadem |
| Abl. | eīsdem *or* īsdem | eīsdem *or* īsdem | eīsdem *or* īsdem |

*a.* The forms of **īdem** are seen to be for the most part identical with those of **is** with the syllable **-dem** added. Before **d** the final **-m** is changed to **-n.**

*b.* Occasionally **īdem** is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, **idem**, *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.

### READING EXERCISE: *RŌMULUS ET REMUS*

**365.** 1. Animum attendite, puerī et puellae; fābulam vōbīs nārrābō. Ōlim duo frātrēs urbem condere incipiēbant. Ūnus ex hīs frātribus erat Rōmulus. Frāter ejus erat Remus. Uterque nōmen suum urbī dare cupiēbat, et inter eōs erat contrōversia, quod duo nōmina eīdem urbī darī nōn poterant. Dēnique nōmen Rōma ex Rōmulō urbī datum est. Sed Remus erat īrātus et mūrōs urbis irrīsit, quod parvī erant. Tum ūnus ex comitibus Rōmulī Remum interfēcit.

2. Dux meus est Rōmulus, et nōmen ejus huic urbī dabitur. Nunc urbs est parva, sed posteā magna et clāra erit, et omnēs nōmen ejus audient. Cum urbs magna erit, magnōs mūrōs habēbit; nēmō tum eōs mūrōs irrīdēbit.

**366.** VOCABULARY

**animus, -ī,** M., mind, spirit
**attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum,** turn toward; **animum attendere,** give attention
**condō, -ere, condidī, conditum,** found, establish
**contrōversia, -ae,** F., controversy
**dēnique,** *adv.*, finally
**īdem, eadem, idem,** same
**īrātus, -a, -um,** angry
**irrīdeō, -rīdere, -rīsī, -rīsum,** laugh at
**Remus, -ī,** M., Remus

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**367.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. We are citizens of the same town, but we are not friends. 2. These two boys were running to the same place. 3. Letters were given to the same messenger by the lieutenant and the centurion. 4. The fields of Gaul were often laid waste by the

same enemies. 5. We shall send the same soldiers again to the enemy's camp. 6. We returned to the same city in the winter, but we did not see the same men and women.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**368.** 1. What is an *animated* manner? 2. What is a *controversial* manner? 3. What is meant by an *irate* parent? 4. What is a tedious *narrative?*

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **īdem lēgātus.** 2. Decline together **eadem urbs.** 3. Conjugate **condō** in the perfect and past perfect, active voice. 4. Conjugate **attendō** and **irrīdeō** in the future, active voice.

VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY

## LESSON LVII

### FUTURE PERFECT: SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

#### MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

**369.** The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. Thus, *I shall have finished the work in two weeks.* The future perfect is used less frequently than the other tenses in English. It is used somewhat more frequently in Latin than in English.

#### FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

**370.** The future perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-eri-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are used as in the present tense. The **ī** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō** in the first person singular.

*Singular*

| | |
|---|---|
| portāverō, *I shall have carried* | monuerō |
| portāveris, *you will have carried* | monueris |
| portāverit, *he will have carried* | monuerit |

*Plural*

| | |
|---|---|
| portāverimus, *we shall have carried* | monuerimus |
| portāveritis, *you will have carried* | monueritis |
| portāverint, *they will have carried* | monuerint |

#### THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

**371.** The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle of a verb with the future indicative of **sum**.

*Singular*

| | |
|---|---|
| portātus erō, *I shall have been carried* | monitus erō |
| portātus eris, *you will have been carried* | monitus eris |
| portātus erit, *he will have been carried* | monitus erit |

*Plural*

| | |
|---|---|
| portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried* | monitī erimus |
| portātī eritis, *you will have been carried* | monitī eritis |
| portātī erunt, *they will have been carried* | monitī erunt |

### THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

**372.** A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses of one voice and number is called a *synopsis* of that verb. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular, active voice, indicative mood, is as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | portō | PERF. | portāvī |
| IMPF. | portābam | P. PERF. | portāveram |
| FUT. | portābō | F. PERF. | portāverō |

### READING EXERCISE: *VERBA MĪLITUM ANTE PROELIUM*

**373.** Ab omnibus partibus est silentium. Nox est obscūra, quod lūna non fulget. Hostēs adventum nostrum nōn vidēbunt, et in castra eōrum perveniēmus antequam arma parāverint. Deinde impetum faciēmus et multōs capiēmus. Hostēs fugere nōn poterunt, quod castra circumveniēmus. Cum captīvīs quōs cēperimus, urbem nostram in triumphō intrābimus, et omnēs cīvēs nōs propter victōriam nostram salūtābunt et laudābunt. Laetī urbem et amīcōs iterum vidēbimus. Longē ā patriā absumus, et paene exulēs sumus.

Haec ante proelium erant verba mīlitum.

### 374. VOCABULARY

**adventus, -ūs,** M., coming, arrival
**antequam,** *conj.*, before
**captīvus, -ī,** M., prisoner
**deinde,** *adv.*, next
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī,** flee
**fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī,** shine
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** enter
**silentium, -ī,** N., silence
**triumphus, -ī,** M., triumph
**verbum, -ī,** N., word

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**375.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. We shall be happy, because we shall have seen our native country again. 2. I shall have walked for a long time, and I shall be tired out. 3. When you (shall) have returned, you will be unhappy. 4. The legion will have driven back the enemy, but the danger will remain. 5. The king had fled with a few companions. 6. The Romans often led barbarians in triumph through the streets of Rome.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**376.** 1. Give a noun which is derived from **adventus.** 2. Complete the following outline of derivation by replacing the dash by a Latin verb: *captive*, **captīvus,** ———. 3. Give a noun which is derived from **fugiō.** 4. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *refulgent.* 5. What is a *triumphal* procession?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person plural of **laudō** in the active voice, in the six tenses which have been studied. 2. Give the third person singular of **mittō** in the active and passive of the six tenses which have been studied. 3. Conjugate **maneō** in the perfect and future perfect, active voice.

ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL

## LESSON LVIII

### DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

**377.** Most verbs meaning to *please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative.

**Equus *tibi* placet,** *the horse pleases you.*

*a.* The verbs **pāreō** and **resistō,** previously given, are of this class.

*b.* The English equivalents of these verbs take direct objects, but the Latin words did not suggest to the Romans a direct object. Thus **persuādēre** meant *make attractive to,* and **placēre** meant *be pleasing to.*

### READING EXERCISE

**378.** 1. Animum attendite et audīte, comitēs. Illum collem capere jussī sumus. Ducī nostrō pārēbimus, et statim impetum faciēmus. Cōpiae hostium nōbīs nōn diū resistent, quod paucae sunt, et castra eōrum non facile dēfendī possunt. Brevī tempore illī erunt aut captīvī aut mortuī.

2. Sociīs nostrīs grātiās agimus quod auxilium nōbīs dedērunt. Ex maximō bellō servātī sumus, et iterum in terrā nostrā est pāx. Nūper patria nostra in magnō perīculō erat, sed nunc hostēs ex urbibus agrīsque expulsī sunt. Ab omnibus partibus vōcēs eōrum audīmus quī propter fīnem bellī laetī sunt. Nunc ipsum nōmen bellī ōdimus.

### 379. VOCABULARY

**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** do, drive
**brevis, -e,** short
**grātia, -ae,** F., favor; **grātiās agere,** to thank
**maximus, -a, -um,** greatest
**mortuus, -a, -um,** dead
**nūper,** *adv.,* recently
**ōdī, ōdisse,** hate
**-que,** *conj.,* and
**vōx, vōcis,** F., voice

*a.* The conjunction **-que,** meaning *and,* is joined to the second of the two words which it connects. Thus, **collis montēsque** means *the hill and the mountains.* A word or syllable which is thus attached to the end of another word is called an *enclitic.* The preposition **cum** is used as an enclitic with the ablative forms of **ego, tū, quī,** and the reflexive **suī** (*Section* **351,** *c*).

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**380.** Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Boys, obey your father, and remain at home. 2. The boys obeyed their father and mother and remained at home. 3. We have resisted the enemy, and we have saved the town. 4. I hear the voices of the sentinels who are in front of the camp. 5. The consul will lead the prisoners in triumph through the city. 6. The citizens thanked us, and our friends praised us.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**381.** 1. What connection in meaning can you see between *action* and **agō?** 2. What is *brevity?* 3. What is meant by the *maximum* capacity? 4. What is the meaning of *odium?* 5. What is *vocal* music?

---

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for *friend* in the sentences "He praises his friend" and "He pleases his friend." 2. Write two English sentences containing direct objects which will be translated into Latin by the dative and two containing direct objects which will be translated by the accusative. 3. Write two English sentences containing indirect objects. 4. Write the third person singular of **agō,** active and passive, in all six tenses.

## LESSON LIX

### FORMS OF QUESTIONS

**382.** There are three forms of Latin questions aside from those which are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. The first form has **-ne,** added to an important word, usually the first word, the second form is introduced by **nōnne,** and the third by **num.** The translation of these three forms is illustrated by the following:

**Vēnitne?** *has he come?*
**Nōnne vēnit?** *has he not come (hasn't he come)?*
**Num vēnit?** *he has not come, has he?*

*a.* Sometimes **-ne** is omitted, and a question of the first form indicated merely by the interrogation point.

*b.* In answers "yes" is often expressed by **ita** (literally, *so*). Often a question is answered by repeating the verb. Thus, **"Vēnitne?"** "*Has he come?*" **"Vēnit,"** "*He has.*" The answer "no" may be expressed by **nōn** (or **minimē**) or by repeating the verb with a negative. Thus **"Adestne?"** "*Is he present?*" **"Nōn adest,"** "*No.*"

### READING EXERCISE: *PUER IN FLŪMEN CADIT*

**383.** 1. Parvus puer in flūmen cecidit. In perīculō est, quod flūmen altum est.

Num puer natāre potest?

Minimē. Fūnem dēmittite.

Ego in flūmen dēsiliam et eum juvābō.

Potesne tū natāre?

Ita. Nōnne saepe in flūmine et lacū natō? Dā mihi fūnem, et puerum servābō.

Nunc puer fūnem prehendit. Trahite, amīcī, puerum juvāte.

2. Omnēs natāre scīre dēbent. Sīc aut vītam suam ser-

vāre aut aliōs juvāre poterunt. Is quī bene natat nōn timet cum in flūmen cadit.

Sciuntne amīcī tuī natāre?

Ita. Nōnne nōs vīdistis in flūmine quod nōn longē ab oppidō nostrō abest? Ibi saepe natāmus.

### 384. VOCABULARY

**cadō, -ere, cecidī,** fall
**dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** let down
**dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum,** jump down
**fūnis, fūnis, -ium,** M., rope
**lacus, -ūs,** M., lake
**minimē,** *adv.*, least, not at all
**prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum,** seize, take hold of
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum,** drag, draw, pull

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**385.** Tell which form of question is illustrated by each of the first four sentences which follow. Translate all the sentences into Latin: 1. Do you not see the men and the bridge? 2. The river is not deep, is it? 3. Do the consuls live on the Palatine? 4. Did not our soldiers save your (native) country? 5. Your army resisted the barbarians bravely, but you did not have sufficiently large forces. 6. The soldiers obey the lieutenant, but they hate him.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**386.** 1. What relation in form can you see between **cadō** and *accident?* What Latin preposition is represented by the first syllable of *accident?* 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *desultory.* 3. What is a *prehensile*-tailed monkey? 4. What is a *tractor?*

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write English sentences illustrating each class of Latin questions described in the lesson. 2. Give the present active infinitive of each verb in the lesson. 3. Decline the pronouns **ego** and **tū.** 4. Decline the relative pronoun.

## SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

**387.** VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LII–LIX

adventus, -ūs
animus, -ī
captīvus, -ī
contrōversia, -ae
fuga, -ae
fūnis, fūnis
grātia, -ae
honor, honōris
injūria, -ae
secūris, secūris
signifer, -erī
silentium, -ī
sōl, sōlis
triumphus, -ī
verbera, verberum
vōx, vōcis

alter, altera, alterum
brevis, -e
dūrus, -a, -um
īrātus, -a, -um
maximus, -a, -um
mortuus, -a, -um

ego, *gen.* meī
īdem, eadem, idem
ipse, ipsa, ipsum
tū, *gen.* tuī
uter, -tra, -trum

agō, -ere
aperiō, -īre
attendō, -ere
cadō, -ere
caedō, -ere
circumveniō, -īre
condō, -ere
dēmittō, -ere
dēsiliō, -īre
dīcō, -ere
effugiō, -ere
exeō, -īre
frangō, -ere
fugiō, -ere
fulgeō, -ēre
intrō, -āre
irrīdeō, -ēre
ōdī
pellō, -ere
petō, -ere
possum, posse
prehendō, -ere
recipiō, -ere
resistō, -ere
restituō, -ere
sūmō, -ere
surgō, -ere
teneō, -ēre
trahō, -ere
vulnerō, -āre

antequam
deinde
dēnique
magis
minimē
nōndum
numquam
nūper
paene
tūtō
an
enim
-que

### ROMANCE WORDS FROM LATIN

**388.** We have already seen (Lesson I, page 1) that the Romance languages of Europe and South America are of Latin origin.

A glance at the following table, giving the numbers from one to ten in Latin and in the modern languages derived from

Latin, will show how close the relation is between these languages and Latin.

| *Latin* | *Italian* | *French* | *Spanish* | *Portuguese* | *Roumanian* | *English* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ūnus | uno | un | uno | um | un | *one* |
| duo | due | deux | dos | dois | doi | *two* |
| trēs | tre | trois | tres | trez | trei | *three* |
| quattuor | quattro | quatre | cuatro | quatro | patru | *four* |
| quīnque | cinque | cinq | cinco | cinco | cinci | *five* |
| sex | sei | six | seis | seis | sesse | *six* |
| septem | sette | sept | siete | sete | septe | *seven* |
| octō | otto | huit | ocho | oito | opt | *eight* |
| novem | nove | neuf | nueve | nove | noua | *nine* |
| decem | dieci | dix | diez | dez | zece | *ten* |

*a*. The French words for *the* (*le*, *la*, *les*) are derived from Latin **ille**. The word for *is* (*est*) is spelled in French exactly as in Latin although pronounced differently.

# HORĀTIUS

*Note.*—New words occurring in this play and the following plays will be found in the complete Vocabulary, pages 275-293.

PERSŌNAE

Porsenna: *rēx Etrūscōrum.*
Sextus Tarquinius: *fīlius Tarquiniī Superbī.*
Mamilius: *rēx Tusculī, socius Porsennae.*

*Scaena I.*

Tarquinius Superbus: *rēx Rōmānōrum, exul.*
Vigilēs: *Etrūscī.*
Ducēs Mīlitum: *Etrūscī.*

*Scaena II.*

Valerius, Pulvillus } *cōnsulēs Rōmānī.*
Horātius Cocles, Spurius Lartius, Titus Herminius } *senātōrēs Rōmānī*
Vigil Prīmus, Vigil Secundus } *Rōmānī*
Cīvēs: *Rōmānī*
Mīlitēs: *Etrūscī.*

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN CASTRĪS ETRŪSCŌRUM

*Vesperī. Porsenna ante tabernāculum suum stat; ā dextrā Mamilius; ā sinistrā Tarquinius Superbus; ā tergō Sextus Tarquinius. Ante Porsennam ducēs mīlitum imperāta expectant. Longē ā dextrā stant vigilēs; hī Rōmam prōspectant.*

POR. Bene pugnāvistis hodiē, Ō ducēs, vōs et mīlitēs Etrūscī.

DUC. Grātiās tibi agimus, rēx maxime: prō patriā et prō tē pugnāvimus.

POR. Quō nōmine hic mōns appellātur, ubi jam castra posuimus?

SEX. Jāniculum vocātur hic mōns.

SUP. Jāniculum habēmus; facile erit Rōmam capere.

POR. Quō modō Jāniculum cēpistī, Mamilī? Nārrā nōbīs!

DUC. Bene nōs dūxit Mamilius, Ō rēx maxime!

POR. Hoc sciō; attendite animum et audīte!

MAM. Ō rēx maxime, Jāniculum tenēbat Pulvillus cōnsul cum centum mīlitibus; juvenis est et malus dux; male imperat, neque Rōmānī illī pārēre volunt. At diū nōbīs resistēbant; neque facile erat illud parvum agmen dē monte pellere. Tandem centum mīlitēs circum montem mīsī; hī ā tergō Rōmānōs subitō oppugnāvērunt. Pulvillus pavidus tergum vertit; cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgit; cēterōs occīdimus. Ille, tertius in ōrdine ducum [*ducem quendam indicat*], prīmus in summum montem pervēnit. Hostēs illum vulnerāverant et signiferum occīderant. Statim ille signum ē dextrā mortuī rapuit et in summō monte posuit.

POR. Bene fēcistī, Mamilī; bene fēcērunt tuī mīlitēs. Tū, dux vulnerāte, hūc venī! [*Dux tertius appropinquat.*] Accipe hoc praemium! [*Armillam bracchiō*

### VOCATIVE OF NOUNS IN *-IUS*

**389.** Proper nouns ending in **-ius,** and also the common noun **fīlius,** form the vocative by replacing the ending **-ius** of the nominative by **-ī.** Thus, **Cornēlius,** vocative **Cornēlī.**

### DECLENSION OF *QUĪDAM*

**390. quīdam,** *a certain*

*Singular*

| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | quīdam | quaedam | quiddam (quoddam) |
| GEN. | cujusdam | cujusdam | cujusdam |
| DAT. | cuidam | cuidam | cuidam |
| ACC. | quendam | quandam | quiddam (quoddam) |
| ABL. | quōdam | quādam | quōdam |

*circumdat. Tum dux sē in ōrdinem recipit.*] Crās Rōmam oppugnābimus.

DUC. [*laetīs clāmōribus.*] Crās Rōmam capiēmus.

SUP. Crās rēx iterum erō Rōmānōrum.

SEX. Crās omnēs inimīcōs occīdam.

SUP. Crās omnēs nōbilēs in vincula conjiciam.

SEX. Vae victīs! nōs enim Rōmā expulērunt.

SUP. Ignāvī hominēs rēgem habēre nōlēbant; poenās crās dabunt.

DUC. [*murmurant.*] Fortēs, nōn ignāvī, sunt Rōmānī. Fortēs hostēs amāmus; ignāvōs ōdimus amīcōs.

POR. Quandō et quō modō Rōmam oppugnābimus?

SEX. Statim hoc faciēmus; sī enim Rōmānī pontem sublicium frangent, neque Tiberim trānsīre neque urbem intrāre poterimus.

DUC. Nōs quidem hodiē diū pugnāvimus; sine somnō mīlitēs nōn bene pugnābunt.

SUP. Vigil! Vigil!

VIG. Quid vīs, rēx?

---

*Plural*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | quīdam | quaedam | quaedam |
| GEN. | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| DAT. | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| ACC. | quōsdam | quāsdam | quaedam |
| ABL. | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*

**391.** The irregular verb **volō,** *I wish, I am willing,* has the following principal parts: **volō, velle, voluī.** It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative.

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| volō | volumus |
| vīs | vultis |
| vult | volunt |

NOTE—In the imperfect and future indicative **volō** is conjugated exactly like **dūcō: volēbam, volēbās,** etc., **volam, volēs,** etc.

SUP. Quid nunc Rōmānī faciunt?

VIG. Omnēs intrā moenia sē recēpērunt. Vigilēs tamen ē moenibus prōspectant.

POR. Frēgēruntne pontem?

VIG. Minimē, rēx maxime! Stat pōns.

POR. Quālis erit nox?

VIG. Obscūra; nūbilāre enim coepit, neque lūna fulgēbit. Etiam nunc vigilēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn possumus; nōn jam pōns in cōnspectū est; hāc nocte caecī erunt vigilēs.

POR. Bene dīxistis, vigilēs. Hoc igitur cōnsilium omnēs audīte! Quārtā vigiliā, dum Rōmānī adhūc dormiunt, ad pontem silentiō appropinquābimus. Antequam illūc pervēnerimus, nōs neque vidēre neque audīre vigilēs poterunt. Nūllā morā pontem trānsībimus et portam facile rumpēmus, dum Rōmānī arma petunt et tōtā urbe trepidant.

DUC. Bonum cōnsilium cēpistī, Ō rēx maxime! Vincēmus.

POR. Hoc cōnsilium, ducēs, mīlitibus nūntiāte! Deinde usque ad quārtam vigiliam dormīte!

DUC. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

POR. Vigilēs, cum quārta vigilia erit, ē somnō nōs omnēs excitāte!

VIG. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

### DECLENSION OF *ALIQUIS*

**392. aliquis,** *some, someone.*

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| NOM. | aliquis | aliqua | aliquid (aliquod) |
| GEN. | alicujus | alicujus | alicujus |
| DAT. | alicui | alicui | alicui |
| ACC. | aliquem | aliquam | aliquid (aliquod) |
| ABL. | aliquō | aliquā | aliquō |

### SCAENA SECUNDA. RŌMAE

*Ā sinistrā appārent moenia urbis; Tiberis praeter moenia fluit; rīpam ulteriōrem ad portam urbis jungit pōns sublicius. Vigilēs ē summīs moenibus prōspectant. In rīpā ulteriōre agmen Etrūscōrum ad pontem sublicium silentiō appropinquat, sed adhūc procul abest, cum sōl surgere incipit. Prīmā lūce vigilēs hostēs vident.*

VIG. I. Audīsne aliquid?
VIG. II. Quam timidus es! Ventus aquam agitat.
VIG. I. Pedēs hominum audiō.
VIG. II. Nōlī hoc crēdere. Sōl mox surget; tum vidēre poterimus.
VIG. I. Aliquid videō. Aliquid sē movet.
VIG. II. Agmen est. Hostēs sunt.
VIG. I. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.
VIGILES. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

[*Cīvēs armātī portam aperiunt et prōspectant. Valerius et Pulvillus in pontem currunt.*]

VAL. Frangite pontem, cīvēs.
PUL. Tempus nōn dabunt hostēs. Eheu, nōs prīmōs occīdent. Quid facere possumus? Quō fugere dēbēmus?

---

*Plural*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | aliquī | aliquae | aliqua |
| GEN. | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| DAT. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| ACC. | aliquōs | aliquās | aliqua |
| ABL. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

VAL. Silē, ignāve! Cūr herī mīlitēs frangere pontem nōn jussistī? Tū enim imperātor erās. Hodiē ego Rōmānīs imperō. [*Pulvillus in urbem redit. Multī cīvēs in portā appārent.*] Audīte, cīvēs! Sī duo vel trēs hostibus breve temporis spatium resistere poterunt, cēterī pontem frangent. Ita urbem servāre poterimus.

HOR. [*inter cīvēs appāret.*] Quid dīcēbat cōnsul?

CIV. Sī quis hostibus resistet, nōs pontem frangere poterimus.

HOR. Ego, Ō cōnsul, pontem dēfendam. Quis mēcum hoc prō patriā faciet?

SPU. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ego tibi socius erō, fortis Horātī.

HOR. Tū bonus eris socius. Tēcum bene pugnābō. Tamen sī trēs erimus, tōtum hostium agmen facile repellēmus.

TIT. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ecce tertius erō. Prō Rōmā et Rōmānīs cum hīs comitibus pugnābō.

VAL. Vōbīs agō grātiās.

CIV. Vōbīs grātiās agimus.

[*Etrūscī appropinquant.*]

POR. Currite, mīlitēs! Pontem occupāte!

VAL. Properāte vōs! currunt enim hostēs.

[*Trēs pontem trānseunt.*]

HOR. Ego medius stābō; tū, Spurī, ā dextrā stā, Herminī, tū ā sinistrā!

[*Etrūscī ad pontem adveniunt.*]

POR. Oppugnāte, mīlitēs! Illōs trēs occīdite et urbem intrāte!

VAL. Secūrēs sūmite, cīvēs! sūmite gladiōs! frangite pontem!

POR. Mamilī, mēcum manē! Herī satis pugnābās. Sextus contrā suam urbem hominēs dūcet.

VAL. Dā mihi secūrem, tū! Ita, ita, lignum frangite.

[*Ipse pontem ferit dum mīlitēs Etrūscī pontem oppugnant.*]

SPŪ. Cavē, Herminī! ā sinistrā oppugnābunt.

TIT. Parātus sum; ecce, undique veniunt.

HOR. Dūra verbera date! Nōn multī eōdem tempore nōs oppugnāre possunt.

PUL. [*in moenibus appāret.*] Venīte, vōs, ad moenia! [*Multī cīvēs in moenia veniunt.*] Sagittās mittite! Jacula cōnjicite!

SEX. Mēcum venīte, mīlitēs! Ego Horātium occīdam. Mihi quidem nōn resistet.

CIV. Cūjus vōcem audīmus?

VIG. I. Sextus Tarquinius hostēs dūcit.

CIV. Apage, perfide Sexte! Num audēs Rōmam revenīre?

SEX. Mox alia clāmābitis, cum vōs in vincula conjiciam.

CIV. Occīde Sextum, Ō Horātī! Etiam sī hostēs nōs vīcerint, gaudēbimus, quod perfidus Sextus mortuus erit.

[*Sextus Horātium oppugnat; Spurius et Titus contrā aliōs pugnant.*]

PUL. Cavēte, sagittāriī! Nōlīte nostrōs occīdere! Cavēte, jaculātōrēs! Suprā capita nostrōrum jacula conjicite!

VIG. II. Uter vincet? Ecce noster illum ferit!

CIV. Iō triumphe! Mortuus est Sextus.

PUL. Minimē, surgit. Horātī, iterum ferī!

[*Alter Horātium oppugnat, dum Mamilius Sextum ē perīculō trahit.*]

CIV. Quis auxilium fert?

PUL. Mamilius.

CIV. Ecce, Sextum ē perīculō trahit.

VIG. I. Nunc redit; ipse Horātium oppugnābit.
CIV. Eheu, nōn mortuus est Sextus.
VAL. Auxilium date, cīvēs; ecce, paene frāctus est pōns.
CIV. Iō, Spurius hostem occīdit; nunc alterum ferit.
VIG. II. Eheu! Horātium vulnerāvit Mamilius.
CIV. Eheu! Spurī, auxilium dā!
VIG. I. Ecce. Mamilium repellunt.
VAL. [*māgnā vōce.*] Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns. Jam, jam redī, Horātī!
CIV. Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns! Nōs servāvistis; jam vōs servāte!
HOR. Redīte, comitēs! dum tempus manet, redīte!
SPU. TIT. Tū etiam nōbīscum redī! Sine tē nōn redībimus.
CIV. Redīte, fortēs virī! Jam jam cadit pōns.
HOR. Redīte, comitēs! Vōbīs hoc imperō. Cōnsilium habeō bonum; mē hostēs nōn occīdent.
SPU. TIT. Pārēmus. Valē! [*Ad portam redeunt.*]
CIV. Nōlīte Horātium relinquere!
SPU. Ipse imperāvit. Pārēmus.
[*Spurius et Titus urbem intrant.*]

CIV. Sērō redībis, Horātī. Cadit pōns.
HOR. [*Scūtum ad cīvēs conjicit.*] Excipite, cīvēs, scūtum! Nōn honestum est scūtum relinquere. [*Gladium in mediōs hostēs conjicit.*] Vōs, hostēs, gladium excipite! Tibi mē committō, Tiberis. [*Dum pōns cadit, Horātius in flūmen dēsilit.*]
PUL. Quid facit? Vulnerātus est; nōn potest natāre.
CIV. Ita; flūmen trānsit; ad portam natat.
VAL. Dēmittite fūnēs! [*Cīvēs fūnem dēmittunt.*]
CIV. Fūnem prehendit. Trahite! trahite!
OMNES. Trahite! trahite! [*Cīvēs Horātium ex aquā in portam trahunt.*]

VAL. }
PUL. } Senātus tibi grātiās agit. 100

CIV. Populus Rōmānus tibi grātiās agit.

OMNES. Rōmam servāvistī.

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

RUINS OF THE COLISEUM

# LESSON LX

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

### FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**393.** The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns,** and is formed on the present stem. The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows.

| I | II | III | | IV |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (portō) | (moneō) | (dūcō) | (capiō) | (audiō) |
| portāns | monēns | dūcēns | capiēns | audiēns |
| *carrying* | *warning* | *leading* | *taking* | *hearing* |

*a.* There is no present passive participle in Latin.

### DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**394.** Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| Nom. | portāns | portāns | portantēs | portantia |
| Gen. | portantis | portantis | portantium | portantium |
| Dat. | portantī | portantī | portantibus | portantibus |
| Acc. | portantem | portāns | portantīs (-ēs) | portantia |
| Abl. | portante (-ī) | portante (-ī) | portantibus | portantibus |

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | monēns | monēns | monentēs | monentia |
| Gen. | monentis | monentis | monentium | monentium |
| Dat. | monentī | monentī | monentibus | monentibus |
| Acc. | monentem | monēns | monentīs (-ēs) | monentia |
| Abl. | monente (-ī) | monente (-ī) | monentibus | monentibus |

*a.* The use of the Latin present participle must not be confused with the progressive form of the verb (*Section* **76,** *a*). In the sentence *The man is standing in the street* the expression *is standing* is the progressive form of the verb, and will be translated by one Latin word, **stat.** In the sentence *The man standing on the wall is my brother*, the word *standing* is a participle modifying *man*, and will be translated by the Latin present participle, **stans.**

### READING EXERCISE: A SUCCESSFUL HUNT

**395.** (*Ulysses speaks.*[1]) Per silvam ambulāns, magnum cervum vīdī. Ventus flābat, et cervus sonitum pedum meōrum audīre nōn poterat. Arcum meum cēpī et frontem cervī prīmā sagittā vulnerāvī. Deinde alteram sagittam mīsī, et eum interfēcī. Nunc cervum umerīs meīs ad comitēs portō. Hī murmurant et īrātī sunt, quod cibum nōn habent. Similēs animālibus sunt, quae semper cibum postulant. Nunc in lītore stantēs mē expectant. Laetī erunt cum mē appropinquantem vidēbunt. Mox cēnam parābimus. Post cēnam in silvam redībō, quod tēctum ibi vīdī. Sed nūllī virī in cōnspectū erant. Itaque hunc locum explōrāre cupiō.

**396.** VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **arcus, -ūs,** M., bow | **lītus, lītoris,** N., shore |
| **cervus, -ī,** M., deer | **similis, -e,** like, similar |
| **flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum,** blow | **sonitus, -ūs,** M., sound |
| **frōns, frontis,** M., forehead | **umerus, -ī,** M., shoulder |
| **itaque,** *conj.*, and so, therefore | |

*a.* Frequently a noun or pronoun in the dative is used with **similis: similis animālī,** like an animal.

[1] While returning from Troy, Ulysses, one of the Greek heroes, was driven to the shores of a certain island. This reading exercise and those of the three following lessons represent scenes during his stay on the island.

### EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**397.** 1. The leader returned to the shore carrying a deer. 2. We hear the voices of the soldiers demanding food. 3. I saw a deer running through the forest. 4. The consul is the brother of that (**ille**) man standing on the bridge. 5. We made an attack on the legions crossing the river.

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**398.** 1. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *arch* and *archer*. 2. What is the original meaning of *inflated?* 3. What sort of ornament is a *frontlet?* 4. What is a *simile?*

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the declension of the present participles of **dūcō** and **capiō**. 2. Point out all the present participles in section **395**, and name the case of each. 3. Give the present active and past passive participles of **laudō** and **videō**. 4. Decline **sonitus**. 5. Give a synopsis of **fiō** in the third person singular, active voice.

ROMAN OIL VAULT

## LESSON LXI

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

#### THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL PHRASE

**399.** A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence. Thus, *A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.* In this sentence the phrase *a new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

#### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

**400.** The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence given above as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in gender, number, and case. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute.*

**Duce captō hostēs fūgērunt.** *The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

**Fīliīs meīs laudātīs laetus sum,** *my sons having been praised, I am happy*

**401.** The participle used in agreement with the noun or pronoun of the ablative absolute may be the past participle, as in the sentences which have been given, or it may be the present participle.

**Barbarīs prōcēdentibus nostrī arma parābant,** *the barbarians advancing, our men prepared arms.*

*a.* In the ablative absolute the past participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the verb of the clause, but the present participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as that of the verb.

**402.** Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute construction.

**Amīcō meō invītō diūtius nōn manēbō,** *my friend (being) unwilling, I shall not remain longer.*

**Caesare duce mīlitēs semper fortiter pugnābant,** *Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.*

*a.* The participle *being*, which is often used in translating an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, has no equivalent in Latin.

*b.* The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if these phrases are translated with the preposition *with*.

### FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

**403.** In English, independent phrases which correspond to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not very often used. It is, therefore, frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute by a clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, or *although*, as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

**Monte occupātō,** *when the mountain had been seized.*

**Duce captō,** *after the leader had been captured.*

*a.* Various prepositional phrases, also, may be employed in translating this ablative.

**Gallīs invītīs,** *against the will of the Gauls.*

**Caesare cōnsule,** *in the consulship of Caesar.*

### READING EXERCISE: A DISSATISFIED COMPANY

**404.** (*The sailors speak*). Rēctē ducem nostrum culpāmus, quī nōs hūc dūxit. Ēsurīmus, neque cibum invenīre possumus. Certē dux bonus nōn est, neque dī immortālēs eum amant. In silvam eum areū iit, quia cervī in silvā sunt, sed cervō

interfectō ipse cibum habēbit, et nōs ēsuriēmus. Patriā nostrā relictā, in bellō cum eō (homine) pugnāvimus, sed nunc nōs dēseruit. Hōc duce relictō, nāvem parābimus et ad patriam redībimus. Ibi amīcī nōs expectant, et hī nōbīs cibum dabunt. Sī tūtī illam terram iterum vidēbimus, numquam eam relinquēmus. Satis in bellō pugnāvimus et satis errāvimus.

**405.** VOCABULARY

**certē,** *adv.*, certainly, surely
**culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** blame
**dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum,** desert
**deus, -ī** (*nom. pl.* **dī**), a god
**ēsuriō, -īre,** be hungry
**immortālis, -e,** immortal
**inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** find
**quia,** *conj.*, because
**rēctē,** *adv.*, rightly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**406.** 1. Taking the bow (the bow having been taken) the man hurried toward the forest. 2. On seeing the enemy (the enemy having been seen) the soldiers seized (took) their arms. 3. Hearing the sound of battle (*abl. absolute*), the soldiers ran to the gate of the city. 4. After the capture of the city (the city having been captured), the king was killed. 5. If the gods defend (shall defend) our city, we shall be safe.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**407.** 1. What is a *culpable* action? 2. From which of the principal parts of **dēserō** have our English derivatives come? 3. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **immortālis.** 4. What is the original meaning of *invent?*

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present participles of **culpō, dēserō, inveniō.** 2. Point out the ablatives absolute in section **404.** 3. Conjugate **ēsuriō** in the future indicative active. 4. Write two English sentences which would require the ablative absolute if translated into Latin.

## LESSON LXII

### QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE

#### DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

**408.** 1. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker. Thus, *He said, "I will come."*

2. An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that*. Thus, *He said that he would come.*

*a*. Sometimes no conjunction is used. Thus, *He said he would come.*

#### INDIRECT QUOTATIONS IN LATIN

**409.** In Latin, a simple sentence when used in an indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative. No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin.

**Dīcit puerum in silvā ambulāre,** *he says that the boy is walking in the forest.*

#### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**410.** The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations, and also to certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations. In such sentences as *I heard that you had received a letter*, and *Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant*, the clauses introduced by *that* take the same form in Latin as the indirect quotations given above. That is, their verbs will be infinitives and their subjects will stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing,* and the like.

**Crēdō tē librum meum habēre,** *I believe (that) you have my book.*

*a.* A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject.

**Arbitrāmur ducem nostrum *fortem* esse,** *we think (that) our leader is brave.*

READING EXERCISE: THE FAULT-FINDERS REPROVED

**411.** (*The sailor who has been left in charge speaks.*) Dīcō ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. Quod cibum non habēmus, in silvam iit, ubi crēdō eum cibum petere. Ferīs interfectīs carnem nōbīs dabit. Putō vōs ignāvōs esse et nihil scīre. Mare timētis et omnia timētis. Quod ēsurītis, ducem bonum nostrum culpātis et dīcitis eum vōs dēseruisse. Vōs nōn dēseruit neque dēseret. Etiam nunc aliquem videō quem esse ducem nostrum crēdō. Rēctā ad nōs venit, et aliquid grave umerīs portat. Habitus ejus ostendit eum esse ducem nostrum. Cervum portat, quem in silvā interfēcit. Mox cervus in (*on*) igne pōnētur, et vōs cibum habēbitis.

**412.** VOCABULARY

**carō, carnis,** F., flesh, meat
**fera, -ae,** F., wild animal
**fidēlis, -e,** faithful
**gravis, -e,** heavy
**habitus, -ūs,** M., appearance, garb
**ignis, ignis, -ium,** M., fire
**mare, maris,** N., the sea
**nihil,** *indeclinable,* N., nothing
**rēctā,** *adv.*, directly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**413.** 1. You say that your friends love you. 2. I think you do not have many friends. 3. The sailors believe that their leader wishes to desert them. 4. I say that our leader is faithful. 5. Having killed a deer (a deer having been killed), the leader will return to the shore.

VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**414.** 1. What is a *carnivorous* animal? 2. Give nouns derived from **fidēlis** and **gravis.** 3. Find a verb derived from **ignis.** 4. What are *marine* animals? 5. What does a *nihilist* desire in the way of government?

### SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Why is **ducem,** of the second line of Section **411,** in the accusative case? 2. Give the present active and past active infinitives of **dīcō.** 3. Give the present passive and past passive infinitives of **mittō.** 4. Decline **habitus** in the singular number. 5. Write two English sentences which, if translated into Latin, would take the construction of indirect discourse.

## LESSON LXIII

### NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION: IMPERSONAL VERBS

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION

**415.** The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends in **-ēī** (after a consonant **-eī**). The nominative singular always ends in **-ēs.** The nouns **diēs,** *day,* and **rēs,** *thing,* are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Endings* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | diēs | diēs | rēs | rēs | **-ēs,** | **-ēs** |
| GEN. | diēī | diērum | reī | rērum | **-ēī (-eī)** | **-ērum** |
| DAT. | diēī | diēbus | reī | rēbus | **-ēī (-eī)** | **-ēbus** |
| ACC. | diem | diēs | rem | rēs | **-em,** | **-ēs** |
| ABL. | diē | diēbus | rē | rēbus | **-ē,** | **-ēbus** |

*a.* **Diēs** is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of **diēs.**

*b.* Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. The other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

**416.** There are a few Latin verbs which have only the third person singular, the infinitives, and (occasionally) the participles. Such verbs are called impersonal. The most important are **oportet,** *it is necessary* (or *proper*), and **licet,** *it is permitted.*

### USE OF *OPORTET*

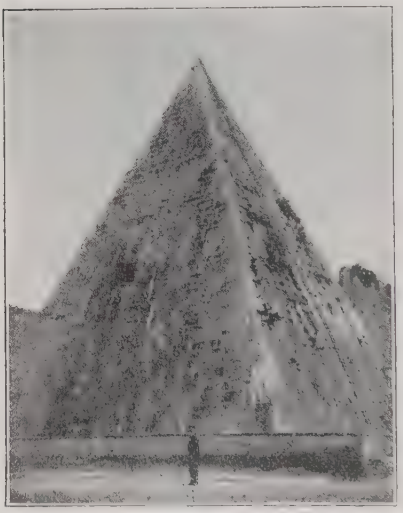
**417.** The impersonal verb **oportet** is regularly used with an infinitive and an accusative as subject of the infinitive. In English the accusative is often translated as subject of the verb *ought,* with a dependent infinitive.

**Oportet nautās fortēs esse,** *the sailors ought to be brave* (more literally *it is proper that the sailors be brave*).

ROMAN LAMPS

### USE OF *LICET*

**418.** With **licet** a dative is used to denote the person who is permitted to do some act, and the infinitive is used to denote the act permitted. In English the dative is often translated as the subject of *may* or *might* with a verb representing the infinitive.



THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS

**Eīs redīre licet,** *they may return* (more literally *it is permitted them to return*).

*a.* Frequently the dative is translated as subject of a form of *permit* (or *allow*) with a dependent infinitive. The sentence above may be translated *they are permitted to return.*

### READING EXERCISE: FOOD AT LAST

**419.** Hic nauta rāmōs siccōs portat, ille (nauta) rēmum frāctum habet, quem in lītore invēnit. Omnēs ignem quam prīmum accendere et cēnam parāre properant. Nam per omnem diem sine cibō in lītore fuērunt, et nunc laetī ducem appropinquāre vident cum cervō, quem umerīs portat. Saepe murmurāvērunt, dīcentēs ducem nōn esse fidēlem, sed hanc rem nōn esse vēram nunc sciunt. Oportet eōs ducem laudāre, oportet eōs ducī grātiās agere, quī vītam eōrum servāvit. Sed multī ex eīs neque bonī neque fortēs sunt. Sī licet eīs cibum habēre, nihil aliud volunt, nihil aliud sciunt. Nōn vident ducem fortem vītam eōrum servāvisse.

**420.** VOCABULARY

**accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum,** kindle, light
**diēs, diēī,** M. *or* F., day
**licet, licēre, licuit,** *impersonal,* it is permitted
**oportet, oportēre, oportuit,** it is proper (*or* fitting), one ought
**quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.
**rāmus, -ī,** M., bough, branch
**rēmus, -ī,** M., oar
**rēs, reī,** F., thing
**siccus, -a, -um,** dry
**vērus, -a, -um,** true

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**421.** 1. On that day (*Section* **328**) many brave men were killed. 2. I have often heard this fact (thing). 3. You are not permitted (it is not permitted to you) to kindle a fire in this place. 4. You ought to announce this fact (thing) at once. 5. You know that the days are long in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**422.** 1. What is the literal meaning of *sine die?* How is this phrase used in connection with the meetings of assemblies? 2. What connection can you see between the meaning of **licet** and *license?* 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *ramify.* 4. What is the derivation of *real?* 5. What is a *veracious* narrative?

---

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive plural of **porta, rāmus, dux, ignis, exercitus, diēs.** Give the ablative singular of these six words. 2. Give the forms of **licet** in the third person singular, active voice, in the six tenses of the indicative. 3. Write an English sentence which can be translated into Latin with the use of **oportet.** Tell what would be the case of the subject of this sentence when translated into Latin. 4. With what classes of verbs is indirect discourse used?

## LESSON LXIV

### CARDINAL NUMERALS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

#### CARDINAL NUMERALS

**423.** The numerals used in counting or in telling how many persons or objects are meant are called *cardinal numerals*. The Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| ūnus, -a, -um, *one* | ūndecim, *eleven* |
| duo, duae, duo, *two* | duodecim, *twelve* |
| trēs, tria, *three* | tredecim, *thirteen* |
| quattuor, *four* | quattuordecim, *fourteen* |
| quīnque, *five* | quīndecim, *fifteen* |
| sex, *six* | sēdecim, *sixteen* |
| septem, *seven* | septendecim, *seventeen* |
| octō, *eight* | duodēvīgintī, *eighteen* |
| novem, *nine* | ūndēvīgintī, *nineteen* |
| decem, *ten* | vīgintī, *twenty* |

#### DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

**424.** The numerals duo and trēs are declined as follows:

| *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| duo | duae | duo | trēs | tria |
| duōrum | duārum | duōrum | trium | trium |
| duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |
| duōs *or* duo | duās | duo | trēs (trīs) | tria |
| duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |

*a.* With the exception of **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs,** the numerals given above are not declined. The declension of **ūnus** is like that of **sōlus,** which is given in Section **13** of the Appendix. **Trēs** is declined like the plural of **omnis**, Section **11,** (2), of the Appendix.

ROMAN TABLE

## 425. READING EXERCISE: CONVERSATION DURING THE FEAST

Nauta I. Haec carō dulcis est.

N. II. Ita est; gaudeō quod carnem iterum edō.

N. III. Quam callidus dux noster est.

N. IV. Gaudēmus quod tam callidum ducem habēmus.

N. III. Cervum in silvā invēnit et frontem ejus sagittā trānsfīxit.

N. N. I et II. Dā nōbīs iterum carnem.

N. V. Similēs suibus estis. Nihil cēterīs relinquētis.

N. N. I et II. Sed per omnem diem nūllum cibum habuimus. Ēsuriēbāmus.

N. VI. Nōs quoque ēsuriēbāmus, sed non suēs sumus. Nōn oportet duōs aut trēs hominēs tōtum cervum edere.

N. N. VII et VIII. Crās in silvam ībimus. Inde multōs cervōs referēmus.

N. IX. Vix dux callidus noster ūnum invēnit: certē vōs nōn facile multōs inveniētis.

Dux. Ipse in silvam quam prīmum redībō, quia tēctum ibi vīdī. Quis in hōc tēctō habitat? Id scīre cupiō.

**426.** VOCABULARY

**callidus, -a, -um,** shrewd, wise
**certē,** *adv.*, certainly
**dulcis, -e,** sweet, delicious
**edō, -ere,**[1] **ēdī, ēsum,** eat
**inde,** *adv.* from there
**referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum,** bring back
**sūs, suis,** M., F., hog, swine
**trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī-, -fīxum,** pierce
**vix,** *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

**427.** 1. My brother has gone to the forest with two companions. 2. We crossed the river with three legions. 3. Five sailors remained on the shore. 4. I saw four men who had been in Spain. 5. Our companions ought to return to the ship with our leader.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**428.** 1. What are *dulcet* tones? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the Italian phrase *Dolce far niente*. What do you suppose is the origin of the Italian word *dolce*? 3. What is the origin of the word *swine*? 4. What is the origin of the words *refer* and *relate*?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the declension of **dulcis**. 2. Decline together **duo hominēs**. 3. Decline together **duae puellae**. 4. Conjugate **trānsfīgō** in the present indicative passive and the perfect indicative active. 5. Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **sūs**.

[1] In classical Latin the present active infinitive of this verb is regularly **ēsse**, and the third person singular of the present active indicative is **ēst**. In this book **edere** and **edit** are used instead of the classical forms.

## CIRCĒ

PERSŌNAE.

Ulīxēs, *quī domum iter facit.*
Eurylochus, *quem Ulīxēs nautīs praefēcit.*

*Scaena I.*

Aegyptius, Philippus, Menexenus, Alexander, Crēsius } *nautae.*
Cēterī nautae.

*Scaena II.*

Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius } *nautae*

Circē: *maga.*
Ancillae quattuor.
Minister.
Coquus.
Servus alius.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ĪNSULAE.

*In saxō stat Eurylochus; circum eum vīgintī nautae, alīī humī sedent, alīī stant; omnēs murmurant.*

EUR. Nōlīte ducem nostrum culpāre!
AEG. At quis nōs in īnsulam dēsertam dūxit?
CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche! Nōnne Ulīxēs?
EUR. Sānē, magnus Ulīxēs vōs hūc dūxit; sed nōlīte illum culpāre!
PHI. Cūr nōn oportet nōs illum culpāre?

---

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

**429.** Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. ***Legiōnī* praeest,** *he is in command of the legion.*

*a.* If the simple verb from which the compound is formed would take an object, the compound verb may take both the accusative and the dative: **Eurylochum *nautis* praefēcī,** *I placed Eurylochus in command of the sailors.*

CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche. Cūr nōn oportet nōs illum culpāre?

EUR. Quia dī immortālēs [*palmās tollit*] nōs et illum in haec perīcula addūxērunt.

MEN. Sī dī Ulīxem nōn amant, nōn jam noster erit dux.

CET. Rēctē dīcis; nōn jam noster erit dux.

ALE. [*ventrem tangit.*] Ēsuriō; dā mihi cibum, Euryloche!

OMNES. Ēsurīmus; dā nōbīs cibum, Euryloche!

EUR. Nōnne magnanimus Ulīxēs in mediās silvās iit, quia cibum nōbīs petere volēbat?

CRE. Num hoc crēdis? Nōs quidem hoc nōn crēdimus.

OMNES. Nōn crēdimus. Immō vērō nōs dēseruit.

AEG. Sī ferās arcū occīdet, ipse eās edet.

OMNES. Ipse carnem edet avium et bestiārum.

PHI. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habeō.

OMNES. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habēmus.

EUR. Ō stultī; fidēlis est noster dux; crēdite illī!

MEN. [*quī circum sē spectat.*] Hominem quī advenit, videō.

CET. Hostisne an amīcus venit?

MEN. Nesciō; adhūc procul abest.

[*Aliī nautae nunc stant.*]

ALE. Ecce, dē summō colle dēscendit.

CET. Quō habitū est? Quae vestīmenta, quae arma portat?

---

*b.* The dative is sometimes used with compounds of **ad, circum, com, in, inter, post, prō, super.** If the compounds of **ad** and **in** denote motion the accusative with **ad** or **in** is regularly used instead of the dative.

### ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

**430.** The ablative modified by an adjective is sometimes used to describe a person or thing. **Homō *magnā virtūte,*** *a man of* (literally *with*) *great courage.*

*a.* The genitive modified by an adjective is also used to describe a person or thing. In many phrases, such as

CRE. Arcum sagittāsque fert; rēctā ad nōs venit.

OMNES. Ulīxēs est.

AEG. Quid umerīs portat?

PHI. Carnem nōbīs affert.

OMNES. Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!

ULIXIS VOX. Cervum sagittā occīdī. Cibum vōbīs afferō. Carnem edēmus omnēs.

OMNES. Iō, Iō! Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!

EUR. Ligna petite, nautae! Properāte vōs!

[*Dum Ulīxēs appropinquat, nautae ligna per lītus petunt et in mediō cumulant.*]

MEN. Rēmum frāctum invēnī, quī in lītore jacēbat.

ALE. Siccōs rāmōs afferō, quī dē arbore cecidērunt.

CRE. } Grave est id quod portāmus; gubernāculum ferimus
AEG. } nāvis nostrae, quod mare in lītus jēcit.

PHI. Rōstrum nāvis repperī; ecce, Minervae imāginem undae perdidērunt; eam vix possum agnōscere.

[*Ulīxēs appāret et cervum humī dēpōnit.*]

EUR. Salvē, Ulīxēs! Nautae, ignem accendite!

CET. Nōn possumus ignem accendere. Ō callidissime omnium hominum [*Ulīxī hoc dīcunt*], hoc prō nōbīs fac, quia ēsurīmus et quam prīmum cēnāre volumus.

EUR. [*Dum Ulīxēs ligna cōnfricat et ignem accendit.*] Nunc callidus et magnanimus est is quī nūper pessimus ducum erat et īnfīdissimus.

[*Ulīxēs in saxō cōnsīdit; nautae in summō igne cervum tōtum pōnunt. Tum circum Ulīxem et ignem sē dispōnunt.*]

---

the example given above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used. But physical traits are usually denoted by the ablative, and measure is always denoted by the genitive. The expression *a four-foot wall* will be translated **mūrus *quattuor pedum*** (*a wall of four feet*).

ULI. Per silvam errābam, cum hunc cervum haud procul vīdī —

MEN. Dulcis est fūmus.

ULI. Mē post arborem cēlāvī —

ALE. [*sonitum labrīs facit.*] Dulcem carnem jam gustō.

ULI. Ventus adversus flābat; nōn igitur mē olfacere cervus poterat.

CRE. Carnem equidem olfaciō dulcissimam.

ULI. Sagittam arcumque parāvī.

AEG. Nōs quidem convīvium parāmus.

ULI. Sagittā prīmā cervī frontem trānsfīxī. Nōnne magna et pulchra sunt cornua, Ō Euryloche?

PHI. Magna et pulchra erit cēna.

MEN. Jam certē tostus est cervus. Licetne mihi statim edere?

OMNES. Statim edere volumus.

ULI. Edite, comitēs! Gaudeō quod nōn jam ēsuriētis.

EUR. Vorāte, vōs quī suibus estis similēs; nihil nisi cēna cibusque vōbīs in mentem venit.

[*Nautae cervum dīvidunt et carnem vorant; intereā Ulīxēs nārrat.*]

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**431.** The comparative and superlative of English adjectives regularly end in *-er* and *-est*: *long, longer, longest.*

In Latin the comparative regularly ends in **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and **-ius** for the neuter, and the superlative in **-issimus, -issima, -issimum,** declined like **bonus.**

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| lātus | lātior, lātius | lātissimus, -a, -um |
| *wide* | *wider* | *widest* |
| fortis | fortior, fortius | fortissimus, -a, -um |
| *brave* | *braver* | *bravest* |
| fēlīx (*gen.* fēlīcis) | fēlīcior, fēlīcius | fēlīcissimus, -a, -um |
| *happy* | *happier* | *happiest* |

ULI. Postquam cervum occīdī, circum mē spectāre coepī. Haud procul inter arborēs appārēbat tēctum domūs. Fūmus inde ascendēbat.

ALE. Sine dubiō torrēbant carnem.

CET. Carō dulcis est! Libenter iterum carnem gustāmus.

CRE. Nōnne usque ad domum īvistī, Ō dux?

ULI. Minimē; comitum mihi in mentem vēnit famēs. Ad vōs igitur quam prīmum praedam meam rettulī.

AEG. Crās ad illam domum ībimus. Quid cēnsētis, comitēs?

CET. Placet; ad eum locum ībimus. 80

MEN. Fortasse ibi multam carnem et bene tostam inveniēmus.

EUR. Glandēs saltem in silvā inveniētis.

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ CIRCAE.

*Nēmō in ātriō adest; sed per jānuam quae ā dextrā est nunc fēminās quae rīdent, nunc suēs quī edunt audītis. A sinistrā intrant Ulīxēs et Eurylochus et trēs nautae, Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius.*

NAU. Ubi sunt comitēs nostrī?

PRO. Eōs quōs perdidimus, neque videō neque audiō.

RHO. At vōcēs audiō.

EUR. Sānē, fēminās quae rīdent audīs.

NAU. Nōnne suēs audītis, comitēs, quī edunt?

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

**432.** The comparatives are third declension adjectives, and are declined as follows:

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| NOM. | lātior | lātius | lātiōrēs | lātiōra |
| GEN. | lātiōris | lātiōris | lātiōrum | lātiōrum |
| DAT. | lātiōrī | lātiōrī | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |
| ACC. | lātiōrem | lātius | lātiōrēs, -īs | lātiōra |
| ABL. | lātiōre | lātiōre | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |

PRO. Silēte, fēmina nunc cantat.
ULI. Circē, maga, pessima fēminārum, cantat quia nostrōs comitēs perdidit.
RHO. Nōnne nōs etiam perdet?
ULI. Priōrēs eam oppugnābimus.
NAU. At sī baculum illud agitābit, nōnne mortuī nōs omnēs cadēmus?
ULI. Sī mihi pārēbitis et omnia quae nunc imperābō faciētis, eam vincēmus.
EUR. Tibi pārēbimus, Ō dux noster, vir callide! Quid imperās?
NAUTAE. Tibi pārēbimus nōs omnēs.
ULI. Apud hanc fēminam nōlīte edere, nōlīte bibere.
OMNES. Nihil hīc edēmus, nihil bibēmus.
ULI. Etiam sī ego cibum et pōculum accipiam, vōs nōlīte idem facere.
RHO. Cūr hoc tibi licet quod nōs facere vetās?
ULI. Hunc quem teneō flōrem Mercurius mihi dedit.
PRO. Quō modō tē dēfendere hic flōs potest?
ULI. Dum hunc flōrem olfaciō, Circē mē laedere nōn poterit.
EUR. Silēte omnēs; aliquem enim audiō quī jānuam aperit.
ULI. Mementōte id quod imperāvī, et pārēte!

[*Intrat Circē cum ancillīs quattuor.*]

CIR. Salvē, Ō Ulīxēs.
ANC. I. Salvē, Ō Euryloche.
ANC. II. Salvē, Ō Naupactōe.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

**433.** Adjectives ending in **-er** in the positive form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -rima, -rimum** to the nominative singular of the masculine instead of using the ending **-issimus.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| pulcher | pulchrior, pulchrius | pulcherrimus, -a, -um |
| miser | miserior, miserius | miserrimus, -a, -um |

ANC. III. Salvē, Ō Proxene.
ANC. IV. Salvē, Ō Rhodī.
ULI. Salvē, Ō rēgīna. Tē, quae meum nōmen scīs, quō modo vocābō?
EUR. [*ancillae I.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
NAU. [*ancillae II.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
PRO. [*ancillae III.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
RHO. [*ancillae IV.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs? 120
CIR. Salvēte, omnēs advenae! Nōmen meum nōlīte rogāre, sed vīnum meum bibite et carnēs meās edite. [*Manibus plaudit.*]

[*Intrat minister quī quīnque pōcula fert.*]

MIN. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.
ANCILLAE. Dā nōbīs pōcula. [*Ē manibus ministrī quattuor pōcula accipiunt. Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat servus quī amphoram fert.*]
SER. Adsum, Ō rēgīna!
CIR. Appropinquā, serve! [*Dum baculum suprā amphoram agitat, venēnum in vīnum dēmittit.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, vīnum cōnsecrō.
ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte vīnum. [*Servus vīnum in pōcula fundit.*]
SER. [*rōce sonōrā.*] Aurea mīrificō complēvī pōcula vīnō. 130

SPECIAL ADJECTIVES IN *-LIS*

**434.** The following adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-limus: facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, humilis.**

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| facilis | facilior, -ius | facillimus, -a, -um |
| similis | similior, -ius | simillimus, -a, -um |

*a.* Other adjectives in **-lis** form their superlatives regularly with **-issimus.**

CIR. Mihi dā pōculum, Ō minister.

MIN. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Tē vel[1] callidiōrem hoc vīnum reddet, Ulīxēs.

ULI. Tum erō tam callidus quam vulpēs.

CIR. Hoc tibi prōmittō. Accipe, Ō rēx. Rēgīna tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. I. Accipe, Ō Euryloche; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. II. Accipe, Ō Naupactōe; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. III. Accipe, Ō Proxene; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. IV. Accipe, Ō Rhodī; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

[*Virī ā fēminīs pōcula accipiunt. Rhodius sē post columnam cēlat.*]

ULI. Oculōs mihi advertite. [*Interea Eurylochus et Naupactōus et Proxenus vīnum humī effundunt, sed Rhodius bibit.*] Vīnum bibō, grātus quia nōs advenās tam benignē excēpistī, Ō rēgīna. [*Flōrem olfacit, dum vīnum bibit. Omnēs Ulīxem diū spectant.*]

ULI. Quid spectātis? Bonum est vīnum quod hospitibus dās, Ō rēgīna; dī tibi praemium meritum dabunt.

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō.

### ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

**435.** The following important adjectives are compared irregularly:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| bonus | melior, melius | optimus, -a, -um |
| malus | pejor, pejus | pessimus, -a, -um |
| magnus | major, majus | maximus, -a, -um |
| multus | ....., plūs | plūrimus, -a, -um |
| parvus | minor, minus | minimus, -a, -um |

[1] *Eren.*

ULI. Quid facis? Quid dīcis? [*Rīdet.*] Eia! Nunc intellegō; tam callidus sum quam vulpēs.

ANC. I. Placetne tibi vīnum, Euryloche? Nōnne aliquid sentīs?

EUR. Dulce est hoc vīnum.

ANC. II. Et tū, Naupactōe, quid dīcis?

NAU. Numquam anteā tam dulce vīnum bibī.

ANC. III. Nōnne optimum est vīnum, Ō Proxene?

PRO. Nectar est, dīs idōneum [*sibi dīcit*], sed nōn hominibus.

ANC. IV. Tibine grātum est vīnum, Ō Rhodī?

[*Rhodius suis sonitum facit et suī similis ex ātriō currit, Ulīxēs nihil videt.*]

NAU. Vīdistīne suem quī ex ātriō currēbat?

PRO. Ubi est Rhodius? Multum timeō.

EUR. Ulīxī crēdite.

ULI. At aliquid mihi in mentem venit, Ō rēgīna. Aliīne hīc adsunt apud tē hospitēs?

CIR. Multās bestiās apud mē habeō, sed hominēs nūllōs.

ULI. Ante hōs duōs diēs[2] comitēs meī, nautae, ad tuam domum vēnērunt, quia ēsuriēbant.

CIR. Ita est. Illīs cibum dedī; hominēs brevī hinc discessērunt.

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS

**436.** Most adverbs are formed from adjectives. Those derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions regularly end in **-ē.** Those derived from adjectives of the third declension regularly end in **-ter** or **-iter.**

| | |
|---|---|
| lātus, *wide* | lātē, *widely* |
| fortis, *brave* | fortiter, *bravely* |
| audāx (*gen.* audācis), *bold* | audācter, *boldly* |
| prūdēns, *prudent* | prūdenter, *prudently* |

[2] *Two days ago.*

ANCILLAE. [*rīdent.*] Suēs tamen apud nōs manent.
NAUTAE. Quid dīcere vultis? Nōn suēs erant comitēs quōs perdidimus, sed virī.

[*Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat coquus quī carnēs in paterā fert.*]

COQ. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.
CIR. Quid affers?
COQ. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Ambrosiam hospitibus dulcem fēlīcibus offers.
CIR. Bibistis, Ō hospitēs! Nunc edite!
ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte carnēs.
CIR. [*baculum suprā carnēs agitat.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, carnēs cōnsecrō. [*Deinde Ulīxī offert. Omnēs carnem manibus accipiunt.*]
ULI. [*subitō clāmat.*] Ubi est Rhodius? [*Dum omnēs circumspectant, nautae carnēs rejiciunt.*]
ANC. IV. Ex ātriō fūgit—[*parvā vōce*]—sūs. [*Rīdent ancillae.*]
ULI. Carnem edō et tibi, Ō rēgīna, grātiās agō.
[*Omnēs diū spectant.*]

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Tandem vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō ego cui nōmen est Circē.

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**437.** The comparative of an adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the corresponding adjective. The superlative of an adverb is formed by changing the ending **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-ē**.

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| lātē (*from* lātus) | lātius | lātissimē |
| ācriter (*from* ācer) | ācrius | ācerrimē |
| facile (*from* facilis) | facilius | facillimē |

ULI. [*māgnō rīsū.*] Tē agnōscō, fēmina dīs hominibusque īnfesta, improba maga. Nihil efficere potes. [*Gladium stringit.*] Tē et tuās ancillās occīdam, quia tot hominēs jam perdidistis.

CIR. Ignōsce mihi, Ō optime rēx! Nōn iterum hominēs laedam, sī mihi ignōscēs.

ULI. Sī tē occīdam, hoc prō certō habēbō.

EUR. Ubi sunt nostrī comitēs? Jubē eam, Ō Ulīxēs, hoc dīcere.

CIR. Sī tibi hoc dīcam, nōnne ignōscere vīs?

ULI. Sī hoc faciēs, vīvēs.

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Ō suēs, quī comitēs Ulīxis fuistis, este iterum hominēs!

[*Intrant cēterī nautae, quī comitēs salūtant.*]

ULI. Nōlī iterum hominem in bestiae formam mūtāre! Hoc jūrā!

CIR. Hoc jūrō.

ANCILLAE [*lacrimant.*] Hoc jūrāmus, quod domina jūrāvit.

ULI. Abīte, miserae.

[*Fēminae discēdunt; nautae gaudent.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

---

### IRREGULAR ADVERBS

**438.** The following adverbs are compared irregularly or are from adjectives of irregular comparison.:

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| bene, *well* | melius | optimē |
| male, *badly* | pejus | pessimē |
| magnopere, *greatly* | magis | maximē |
| multum, *much* | plūs | plūrimum |
| parum, *little* | minus | minimē |

The comparison of adverbs is still further explained in the Appendix, Sections 17 and 18.

# POLYPHĒMUS

PERSŌNAE

| | |
|---|---|
| Ulīxēs. | Aliī Cyclōpēs. |
| Nautae XII. | Ariēs et ovēs. |
| Polyphēmus. | |

## SCAENA PRĪMA. IN ANTRŌ POLYPHĒMĪ.

*Ā dextrā ovīlia; ā sinistrā calathī cāseō plēnī et crātērae lācte plēnae; ā tergō saxum post quod nautae sē cēlant. Ulīxēs et nautae antrum Polyphēmī intrant.*

ULI. Ecce! in cavernā ingentī sumus. Sine dubiō Cyclōpis domus est quem nūper vīdimus.

NAUTA I. Sine dubiō ejus caverna est. Tantum mōnstrum ego numquam vīdī.

N. II. Hominī dissimilis vidētur.

N. III. Ūnum modo oculum in mediā fronte habet.

N. IV. Ovēs et caprōs in agrīs pāscēbat.

OMNES. Sine dubiō in hōc antrō habitat.

ULI. Ita: nam hūc spectāte, virī; nōnne vidētis illōs calathōs cāseō plēnōs? et ovīlia in quibus agnī sunt et haedī? et haud procul crātērās cōnspiciō lācte plēnās.

N. V. Certē, avidus est, sī haec omnia edere potest!

N. VI. Fortasse nōs quoque comedere cupiet, Ō domine.

N. VII. Redīre ad lītus quam prīmum[1] optimum erit.

N. VIII. Mihi quoque id optimum vidētur. Sed cāseum nōbīscum auferēmus et agnōs paucōs haedōsque. Nam cibum nōn habēmus multum in nāvibus.

ULI. Nōlō jam redīre, virī. Melius erit hīc manēre et dōna rogāre cum Polyphēmus redībit.

[1] *As soon as possible.*

N. IX. Temerārius est Ulīxēs. Nōs omnēs perībimus.
ULI. Cēnam parāte, nautae. Cum cēnāverimus, forte ille domum redībit.

[*Nautae cēnam parāre incipiunt.*]

N. X. Hei mihi! Quid audiō? Ipse appropinquat.
N. XI. Fugite, amīcī. Vae miserīs nōbīs.
ULI. Venīte mēcum, virī. In intimam cavernam nōs recipiēmus.

[*Virī sē post saxum cēlant, unde Polyphēmum spectant.*]

N. I. Adestne ille?
N. II. Jam jam gregem in cavernam agit.
N. III. Quid nunc facit? 30
N. IV. Agnōs et haedōs extrā jānuam relīquit: sed ovēs intrā cavernam dūcit.
N. V. Cūr tam obscūra caverna fit?
N. VI. Jānua jam clausa est, nam saxum magnum ante jānuam posuit.

---

CONJUGATION OF *FĪŌ*

**439.** The verb **fīō**, *become, be made,* is used as the passive of **faciō,** which has no passive forms of its own in the present, imperfect, and future. It is conjugated as follows in the present, imperfect, and future indicative.

| PRESENT | | IMPERFECT | | FUTURE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| fīō | .... | fīēbam | fīēbāmus | fīam | fīēmus |
| fīs | .... | fīēbās | fīēbātis | fīēs | fīētis |
| fit | fīunt | fīēbat | fīēbant | fīet | fīent |

*a.* The principal parts are **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

*b.* The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are formed regularly with the past participle **factus** and the forms of **sum. Factus sum, factus eram, factus erō,** etc.

N. VII. Quid Cyclōps nunc agit?

N. VIII. Ovēs et caprās mulget.

N. IX. Nōnne gnem nunc accendit? Flammae lūcem dant.

N. X. Tacēte amīcī. Nōs audiet.

POL. Hem! Quid audiō? Quis adest? [*virōs videt*] Ohē! Quī estis, advenae? Unde vēnistis?

N. XI ET XII. Hei mihi! Quid nōs agere poterimus?

ULI. Nōlīte timēre, amīcī. Ego prō omnibus respondēbō, et fortasse benignē nōs trāctābit. Graecī sumus, quī Trōjā venīmus et domum mare trānsīmus. Sed Juppiter, quī nōbīs īrātus est, ventōs et undās nōs ā viā prohibēre sinit. Itaque ad tuam īnsulam invītī vēnimus. Sed benignus es,[1] Ō hospes, nam supplicēs tuī sumus. Sī tū auxilium nōbīs dederis, dī tē remūnerābuntur.

POL. Stultus es, aut procul ab hāc terrā habitās, sī mē tālem esse putās. Deōs enim nōs Cyclōpēs neque venerāmur neque timēmus. Grātissima

DEPONENT VERBS

**440.** A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Its principal parts are passive forms. The endings of the present infinitives of deponent verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

| I | II | III | IV |
|---|---|---|---|
| **-ārī** | **-ērī** | **-ī** | **-īrī** |

*a.* Examples of the conjugation of deponent verbs are given in Section **33** of the Appendix. Their forms are exactly the same as those of the passive voice of the model verbs before given, except that deponents have the active form for the future infinitive. **Remūneror** in line 51 is conjugated like the passive of **portō,** except that its future infinitive is **remūnerātūrus esse.**

[1] See Section **340.**

autem cēna mihi eritis, tū et nautae tuī. Duōs enim māne et duōs vesperī edam dōnec omnēs mortuī eritis. [*Duōs captōs occīdit et comedit.*]

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

*Ulīxēs cōnsilium init.*
*Postrīdiē māne Ulīxēs et octō nautae in antrō sedent et inter sē loquuntur.*
*Polyphēmus, quī duōs nautās hodiē comēdit, exiit.*

NAUTAE OMNES. Vae nōbīs miserīs! ad patriam nostram numquam redībimus.

N. V. Crūdēlior Cyclōps est quam fera; duōs nostrum herī, duōs hodiē comēdit, et mox omnēs ad ūnum dēvorābit.

ULI. Nōlīte dēspērāre, virī; dī nōs etiam nunc juvāre possunt, et ego ipse cōnsilium inīre incipiō.

N. VI. Tua cōnsilia nōbīs nōn placent; nam propter tē amīcī nostrī quattuor miserrimē periērunt.

OMNES. Vīsne Cyclōpem, dum noctū dormit, occīdere, Ō domine?

ULI. Id facere volō: sed etiam sī eum interficiam, nōs ex antrō per clausam jānuam effugere nōn poterimus.

OMNES. Quam prūdēns dominus noster est! Sed quid nōs facere jam possumus?

ULI. Audīte mē. Baculum longum quod Cyclōps humī relīquit cōnspiciō. Id acuēmus, et in igne adūrēmus. Vesperī, cum Polyphēmus redierit, vīnum eī dabō; nam—ut meministis—optimum vīnum mēcum hūc attulī. Cum ille somnō vīnōque sepultus erit, oculum ejus baculō ārdentī extinguēmus. Tum impotēns ille et imbēcillus fīet.

OMNES. Sapientissimum cōnsilium est. Omnēs tē adjuvābimus.

ULI. Crās, ubi jānua aperta erit, cum ovibus nōs quoque exībimus. Sīc ad lītus et nāvēs tandem effugere poterimus.

OMNES. Omnium prūdentissimus dominus noster est.

SCAENA TERTIA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

*Polyphēmī oculum Graecī extinguunt.*

*Vesperī: Ulīxēs et octō nautae Polyphēmum expectant.*

ULI. Parātīne estis, virī? Mox enim redībit Polyphēmus.

NAUTAE. Ita, parātī sumus. Baculum acūtum ārdēnsque habēmus.

ULI. Quī in oculō Cyclōpis baculum mēcum contorquēre audēbunt? Quattuor ad hunc labōrem sorte ēligere optimum erit.

NAUTAE. Ita vērō: id faciēmus.

N. VII. Hīc est galea, in quam sortēs conjicere possumus.

N. VIII. Hīc lapidēs nōnnūllī sunt, quōs in galeam conjicere possumus.

N. IX. Ego galeam tenēbō et quatiam.

[*IV. Nautae sortēs accipiunt.*]

ULI. Et ego quīntus erō. Dī sortēs optimē rēxērunt; vōs enim quattuor ipse dēligere cupiēbam.

N. X. Aliquem audiō quī appropinquat!

OMNES. Sine dubiō Cyclōps ipse adest.

N. XI. Ita, ovium enim bālātūs audiō.

OMNES. Post saxum recipiēmus nōs, dōnec ille dormiet.

---

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

**441.** The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. **Puer *quinque milia* passuum ambulāvit,** *the boy walked five miles.*

[*Polyphēmus cavernam intrat, ovēs mulget, duōs nautās captōs dēvorat. Ulixēs crātēram vīnō plēnam ei offert.*]

ULI. Ecce, Cyclōps, vīnum tibi offerō. Carnem hominum ēdistī; vīnum nunc bibe: grātissimum est. [*Cyclōps bibit.*]

POL. Dā mihi iterum bibere. Vīnum tuum jūcundum est. Et dīc mihi nōmen tuum. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. [*Sēcum*] Eum fallere optimum erit.

POL. Iterum, advena: vīnum tuum mē multum dēlectat. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. Nōmen meum interrogāvistī: id nōn cēlābō. "Nēmō" nōmen meum est: "Nēminem" māter mea paterque et sociī omnēs mē appellant.

POL. Nēmō, prō beneficiīs tuīs tē remūnerārī cupiō. Postrēmum igitur tē dēvorābō.

ULI. [*sēcum*] Edepol! Grātiās tibi maximās agō. Postrēma tibi cēna erō.

[*Polyphēmus sē humī jacit; mox somnus eum opprimit. IV Nautae ex intimā cavernā exeunt.*]

NAUTAE. Adestne tempus, domine? Dormitne Cyclōps?

ULI. Ita, graviter dormit. Nunc, dī patriī, adjuvāte nōs.

[*Baculum ārdēns afferunt, et in oculō Polyphēmī vehementer contorquent. Ille clāmōrēs horribilēs tollit, et per antrum furibundus ruit.*]

POL. Vae mihi! Quid factum est? Quis oculum meum extīnxit? Ubinam estis, virī? [*Aliī Cyclōpēs extrā cavernam stant.*]

ALII CYC. Cūr tantōs clāmōrēs tollis, Polyphēme? Nōs dormīre prohibuistī! Quis tē laedit, aut quis tē occīdere temptat?

POL. Nēmō mē occīdit, amīcī.

ALII CYC. At sī nēmō in caverna tēcum est, Juppiter fortasse tē laedit. Tū autem patrī tuō Neptūnō supplicā.

ULI. Ohē virī! dolus meus et nōmen simulātum eum fefellērunt!

N. VII. Quid facit ille? Quid fāctūrus est? Potesne vidēre?

N. VIII. Saxum summōvit, et ipse humī ante jānuam sedet.

N. IX. Nōs, dum exīmus, rapere cupit.

OMNES. Quandō fugere temptābimus, Ō domine?

ULI. Prīmā lūce, cum ovēs ad agrōs exībunt, nōs quoque cum eīs exībimus.

SCAENA QUĀRTA. IN EODEM LOCŌ.

*In cavernā omnēs sedent.*

ULI. Festīnāte virī! Sōl mox surget; deinde nōs fugam capere poterimus.

N. XI. Sed quō modō effugiēmus, domine? Nōn intellegō.

N. XII. Cyclōps enim nōs, dum exīmus, capiet.

ULI. Singulī hominēs ā ternīs arietibus ferentur. Trēs enim arietēs colligābō, quōrum medius hominem

---

**442.** The English verb has only present and past participles. The Latin verb has also future participles. The future active participle of **laudō** is **laudātūrus** (**-a, -um**), translated *going to praise* or *about to praise*.

The future active participle may usually be found by changing the ending **-us** of the past passive participle to **-ūrus.** It is declined like the adjective **bonus,** and must agree in gender, number, and case with a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood.

| | *Past passive participle* | *Future active participle* |
|---|---|---|
| (laudō) | laudātus | laudātūrus |
| (moneō | monitus | monitūrus |
| (dūcō) | ductus | ductūrus |
| (capiō) | captus | captūrus |
| (audiō) | audītus | audītūrus |

*a.* The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus.**

ūnum portābit. Sīc omnēs ad lītus incolumēs perveniēmus. Agite arietēs ad mē.

N. VII. Ēn callidum cōnsilium!

[*Ulīxēs arietēs ternōs colligat; singulī hominēs sub ternīs arietibus ligantur.*]

N. VIII. Quō modō tē ipsum servātūrus es?

ULI. Vidēsne hunc ducem gregis? Multō grandior et rōbustior est quam cēterī. Ejus sub ventre vellus tenēbō, et ipse postrēmus exībō.

N. IX. Ecce, sōl surgit! et ovēs exīre incipiunt.

OMNES. Brevī tempore ad lītus perveniēmus. [*vōce parvā.*] Valē Polyphēme!

[*Omnēs ē cavernā efferuntur. Ulīxēs postrēmus sequitur. Polyphēmus arietem dētinet.*]

POL. Quid, Crasse? Tū postrēmus hodiē exīs? Id mīror; nam antehāc prīmus māne exīre, prīmus merīdiē ad rīvōs dēscendere, prīmus vesperī domum redīre solēbās. Bonus amīcus dominī miserī tuī semper fuistī, cujus oculum Nēmō extīnxit? Ēn hominem improbum! Sed haud impūne fīlium Neptūnī caecum effēcit!

[*Ariēs tandem aliōs sequitur. Polyphēmus nautās et Ulīxem in cavernā frūstrā quaerit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

---

**443.** Frequently the future active participle is used with forms of **sum.** Thus, **laudātūrus sum,** *I am going to praise,* **monitūrus est,** *he is going to warn.*

**444.** Latin verbs have a future active infinitive formed by using the future active participle with **esse.** Thus, **laudātūrus esse, captūrus esse, futūrus esse.**

When a subject in the accusative is used with a future infinitive (*Section* **409**), the participle of the infinitive must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

# REDITUS ULĪXIS

PERSŌNAE.

Ulīxēs, *quī Trōjā captā domum redit.*
Tēlemachus: *fīlius Ulīxis.*
Eumaeus: *pāstor.*
Minerva: *dea.*

*Scaena I.*

Argus: *canis Ulīxis.*

*Scaena II.*

Pēnelopē: *uxor Ulīxis.*
Antinous: *procus.*
Amphinomus: *procus.*
Aliī procī.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ITHACAE.

*Ā sinistrā stat casa Eumaeī; prope casam jacet Argus, macer, īnfirmus. Ā dextrā Ulīxēs humī dormit.*

ULI. [*sē ex somnō excitat.*] Eheu! Miserrimus hominum sum. Tot perīcula enim passus et tot per terrās et maria vagātus, ignōtam tandem in terram ā Phaeācibus allātus sum et hīc relictus. [*Intrat Minerva speciem vestēsque juvenis gerēns.*] Ecce autem! Juvenis adest; ille fortasse mē adjuvābit. Salvē, Ō amīce! Quae terra est haec, quō advēnī? Aliēnus enim sum, neque lītus cognōscō.

MIN. Amoena est terra omnibusque arboribus et frūctibus praedita; Ithaca est.

ULI. Quid audiō? Ithaca enim omnium terrārum mihi est cārissima. Cujus etiam est ista casa? Nōnne Eumaeī? Quam fēlīx sum! Quam benignī mihi dī immortālēs sunt! Vīvitne Eumaeus? Et Lāertēs pater meus? Nārrā mihi dē uxōre. Resistitne adhūc Pēnelopē procīs meumque reditum expectat?

[*Minerva suam formam sūmit propriam.*]

MIN. Ecce, Ō patiēns Ulīxēs! Dea sum, et tē adjuvābō. Senem squālidum pannōsumque tē faciam. [*In*

*senem squālidum pannōsumque Ulīxem mūtat.*] Haec est casa Eumaeī, quī semper fidēlis tē et Pēnelopam et Tēlemachum amat. Ille tē cūrābit, dum ego Spartam abeō, unde Tēlemachum redūcam. Ille enim tē petendī causā ante duōs annōs ab Ithacā discessit. Cum redierit, tū tē revēlābis; deinde, illō adjuvante, procōs interficiēs. Valē.

ULI. Ō benigna Minerva! nam tē agnōscō, tibi grātiās agō. [*Exit Minerva. Eumaeus ex casā ēgreditur.*] Salvē, Ō pāstor! Auxilium tuum precor; longum enim iter perfēcī, et multa et dūra passus valdē ēsuriō.

---

THE GERUND

**445.** The Latin gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension. It has no nominative and is used only in the singular. The gerunds of the four conjugations are as follows:

| | I. | II. | III. | IV. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| GEN. | portandī | monendī | dūcendī | audiendī |
| DAT. | portandō | monendō | dūcendō | audiendō |
| ACC. | portandum | monendum | dūcendum | audiendum |
| ABL. | portandō | monendō | dūcendō | audiendō |

*a.* The genitive is translated *of carrying*, *of warning*, etc. The ablative without a preposition is translated *by carrying* or *with carrying*, etc. The ablative is also used with prepositions. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The dative is not often used.

*b.* It must be remembered that the form in *-ing* used to translate the Latin gerund is not a present participle but an English gerund, or, as it is sometimes called, a verbal noun. In the sentence *I am fond of walking* the word *walking* is not a participle but a gerund (or verbal noun).

EUM. Ego etiam senex et miser sum, sed tē adjuvābō; parum tamen cibī habeō, parum opum ex eō diē quō Ulīxēs Trōjam discessit; sed id quod habeō tibi dabō. Venī mēcum in casam.

ULI. Dī tē servābunt; miser enim ipse miserōs adjuvās. [*Ad casam appropinquant; Ulīxēs canem cōnspicit.*] Cujus est hic canis?

EUM. Argus vocātur, fidēlis Ulīxis canis; prīdem sagācissimus in nostrā īnsulā erat et omnium canum validissimus quī ferās sequuntur. At absentem dominum dēsīderat, neque longum vītae spatium, ut crēdō, eī manet.

[*Eumaeus casam intrat.*]

ULI. Arge, Arge, nōnne tuum dominum agnōscis?

[*Canis caput ērigit et dominum agnōscit.*]

ARG. Ō cāre domine, quot post annōs rediistī! Eheu! Sērō venīs. Semper tē amāvī, semper expectāvī. Nunc tandem tē redeunte gaudeō fēlīxque jam ē vītā excēdō. Valē!

ULI. Valē, fidēlis canis, valē!

[*Argus moritur. Eumaeus ex casā prōdit.*]

EUM. Cūr morāris?

ULI. Canis mortuus est.

EUM. Nōn rūrsus ergō dominum suum vidēbit.

ULI. Nōnne tū servus Ulīxis erās?

EUM. Ita eram, sed numquam iterum eum hīs oculīs vidēbō. Lāertēs, pater ejus, aetāte gravis mox dē vītā discēdet. Tēlemachus procul abest, neque umquam fortasse domum redībit. Pēnelopē in diēs[1] miserior lacrimās semper fundit; nōn tamen virum dēspērat. Procī autem improbī illam precantur: "Memoriam Ulīxis dēpōne et alterum virum ē nōbīs ēlige." Illa tamen recūsat neque

[1] Day by day.

cuiquam ex eīs nūbere vult, quī opēs dominī nostrī edendō bibendōque vāstant, et quī dīcere audent—Ō audāciam impudentem—"Sī Tēlemachus redībit, eum occīdēmus."

ULI. Et māter Ulīxis vīvitne adhūc?

EUM. Eheu! Nōlī dē eā loquī: mortua enim est.

ULI. [*lacrimās dissimulat.*] At quid tū putās? Redībitne Ulīxēs annon?

EUM. Numquam: certē mortuus est.

ULI. Nōn vēra dīcis; ipse enim eum vīdī, dum in īnsulā Crētā errō. Vīvus mox domum redībit. Quid audiō? Aliquis appropinquat—amīcus, ut vidētur, nōn enim ululant canēs.

[*Intrat Tēlemachus.*]

EUM. Salvē, Ō Tēlemache! quam fēlīx sum! Saepe enim mēcum dīxī: "Tēlemachum reductum numquam vidēbō."

TEL. Et tū, salvē, Ō fidēlis Eumaee! Quid novī dē Ulīxe mihi dīcēs? Equidem enim nihil dē eō audīvī.

EUM. Heu! Heu! Neque ego. Hic senex tamen, ut dīcit, eum in īnsulā Crētā vīdit; nōlī autem eī crēdere; nōn enim crēdibilem fābulam nārrat. Ego autem māgnō cum gaudiō ad ātrium curram tuum reditum nūntiandī causā. Tū hīc manē et cum sene cibō vīnōque vīrēs renovā!

---

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUAM*

**446.** **quisquam,** anyone

| | *Masculine and Feminine* | *Neuter* |
|---|---|---|
| NOM. | quisquam | quicquam (quidquam) |
| GEN. | cujusquam | cujusquam |
| DAT. | cuiquam | cuiquam |
| ACC. | quemquam | quicquam (quidquam) |
| ABL. | quōquam | quōquam |

(*Plural lacking*)

[*Eumaeus exit. Appāret Minerva, quam sōlus Ulīxēs videt et audit.*]

TEL. [*mortuum Argum cōnspicit.*] Mortuus jacet Argus, quī dominum suum iterum videndī causā tot annōs vīxit. Frustrā ad summam senectūtem dūrāvistī.

MIN. Nunc, Ō Ulīxēs, tempus est! Tē fīliō revēlā. Cōnsiliō captō, omnēs procōs interficiēs. Tē igitur ex sene rūrsus in juvenem mūtābō. Fortis es! Valē!

[*Minerva Ulīxem in juvenem mūtat et exit.*]

TEL. [*sē vertit.*] Eia tū, quis es, quī modo senex, modo juvenis fīs? Certē Prōteus vel alius deōrum immortālium.

ULI. Nōn deus sum, mī fīlī! Nōnne patrem agnōvistī?

TEL. Nōn crēdō; mortuus enim est pater meus neque iterum eum vidēbō.

ULI. Nēquāquam mortuus, sed vīvus domum rediī. Minerva ipsa mē mūtāvit.

TEL. Ō pater cārissime! [*sē amplectuntur.*] Quam grātus mihi redīs, quam procīs odiōsus! At unde venīs? quō modō hūc vēnistī? Cūr ita morātus es? Nārrā mihi, tē precor.

### ORDINAL NUMERALS

**447.** Ordinal numerals are used to number objects in order, as in a row or series, as *first, second, third,* etc. The first twenty Latin ordinals are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| prīmus | quīntus |
| secundus | sextus |
| tertius | septimus |
| quārtus | octāvus |

ULI. Mox tibi et omnibus perīcula mea nārrābō. Nunc autem tempus est dēlīberāre; ego et tū sōlī procōs interficiēmus.

TEL. At enim multī sunt; quid nōs tam paucī possumus?

ULI. Venī mēcum ad ātrium. Crēde dīs; Minerva et Juppiter nōbīs auxilium dabunt. 110

[*Ulīxēs iterum in senem mendīcum mūtātur et cum Tēlemachō exit.*]

### SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ ULĪXIS

*Ā tergō sedet Pēnelopē, quae tēlam lentē texit. Ab utrāque manū accumbunt procī; aliī edunt, aliī bibunt. Prope Pēnelopam in mūrō pendet arcus Ulīxis. Intrat ā sinistrā Eumaeus.*

EUM. Audīte, Ō rēgīna et prīncipēs, Tēlemachus enim ad Ithacam rediit, et mox ad ātrium adveniet.

PEN. Quid novī dē Ulīxe refert?

EUM. Ēheu! Nōn illum vīdit; nihil dē illō audīvit. Sed nōlī tamen lacrimāre, cāra domina; gaudēre enim nunc melius erit, quod fīlius tuus salvus rediit.

PEN. Haud tamen lacrimās retinēre possum, quia nunc post reditum Tēlemachī necesse est mihi virum ex procīs ēligere.

| | |
|---|---|
| nōnus | quīntus decimus |
| decimus | sextus decimus |
| ūndecimus | septimus decimus |
| duodecimus | duodēvīcēsimus |
| tertius decimus | ūndēvīcēsimus |
| quārtus decimus | vīcēsimus |

*a.* The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus, **prīmus, prīma, prīmum,** etc. Compound ordinals, such as **tertius decimus,** have both parts declined.

EUM. Crēde autem dīs, Ō rēgīna! Etiam nunc fortasse Ulīxēs redībit. [*Exit Eumaeus ā sinistrā.*]

ANT. Quam molestus nōbīs est Tēlemachus!

PRO. Sine dubiō ex ātriō nōs fugābit.

ANT. Quid cēnsētis, amīcī meī? Nōnne eum occīdere dēbēmus?

PRO. Vērum dīcis, Ō Antinoe; eum occīdēmus.

AMPH. Nōlīte, Ō amīcī, sanguinem effundere. Hoc enim facere semper nefās est, et nōs poenās dabimus.

PEN. Quam generōsus es, Ō Amphinome! Tū enim sōlus me adjuvās.

PRO. Cōnsilium capiēmus; interficiētur Tēlemachus.

PEN. Ō crūdēlēs, Ō ingrātī vōs quibus Ulīxēs bene faciēbat! Nōnne estis memorēs? Tuum enim patrem, Ō Antinoe, ā populō ē rēgnō expulsum Ulīxēs nōn sōlum prōtēxit sed etiam restituit. Nunc autem nōn satis est tibi illīus ātrium spoliāre et uxōrem contumēliā afficere, sed cupis etiam fīlium ipsum occīdere.

[*Intrat ā sinistrā Tēlemachus.*]

TEL. Salvē, Ō māter mea!

PEN. Salvē, Ō cāre fīlī! [*sē amplectuntur.*] Nārrā mihi dē errōribus tuīs. Quid novī audīvistī?

TEL. Ēheu! Quamquam multōs hominēs dē patre rogāvī, nēmō tamen eum aut vīvum aut mortuum vīderat. Menelāus autem semper iterābat: "Nōlī metuere; Ulīxēs enim redībit et procōs occīdet."

PEN. Quam fēlīx erō, sī hoc fīet. Nunc enim, ut prōmīsī, necesse est mihi odiōsō cuidam nūbere.

[*Intrat Ulīxēs speciem senis mendīcī gerēns, cum Eumaeō.*]

TEL. Venī, Ō senex, accipe pānem!

ULI. Māximās tibi grātiās agō, Ō benigne juvenis.

AMPH. Quis est ille? Semper mendīcīs bene facere fās est.
Venī, Ō mendīce, pānem accipe!

ULI. Dī tē servābunt, Ō prīnceps, quisquis es.

ANT. [*Eumaeō.*] Expelle hunc impudentem! [*Ulīxī.*] Heus tū, quārē aliēnum ātrium invocātus intrās? nisi exībis tē feriam.

ULI. Ō optime, misericordiam precor. Ipse enim ōlim tam dīves eram quam tū, et miserīs hominibus semper benignus.

ANT. Vāpulābis, impudentissime! Apage!

ULI. Superbus es. Cavē autem; mors enim numquam procul abest.

ANT. Accipe plāgās. [*Ulīxem ferit.*]

AMPH. Nōlī ferīre senem, Ō Antinoe; fortasse enim deus est dissimulātus et nōs pūniet.

PEN. Ō crūdēlem hominem! Quandō Ulīxēs redībit!

TEL. Cavē, Antinoe; tū mox mortuus humī jacēbis.

ANT. Nunc tempus est edere et bibere; hāc nocte enim, quia Tēlemachus jam rediit, Pēnelopē virum ē nōbīs ēliget. Quis nostrum, Ō cāra rēgīna, grātissimus tibi esse vidētur?

PEN. Amātōrēs dōna offerre dēbent, nōn spoliāre.

PRO. Ecce! Dōna tibi offerimus. Quis optimum dat?

[*Quisque dōna ante Pēnelopam offert.*]

PEN. Omnia pariter splendida sunt; sed superest vōbīs

---

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUE*

**448. quisque,** each

| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
|---|---|---|---|
| NOM. | quisque | quaeque | quidque |
| GEN. | cujusque | cujusque | cujusque |
| DAT. | cuique | cuique | cuique |
| ACC. | quemque | quamque | quidque |
| ABL. | quōque | quāque | quōque |

(*Plural rare*)

nunc novissimum certāmen. In ātriō pendet arcus Ulīxis. Quis vestrum eum flectere, nervum aptāre, sagittam per circulōs duodecim mittere potest? Omnibus quidem temptāre licet, neque recūsābitis. Deinde eī tandem nūbam quī id facere poterit quod vir meus haud difficulter faciēbat. Incipite! Eumaee, dēme arcum, ner- 180
vum, sagittam! [*Exit Pēnelopē ā tergō.*]

PRO. Heu! Heu! Haud facile erit nōbīs hoc facere, quī edendō, bibendō, dormiendō, tam dēbilēs factī sumus.

ANT. Fortēs este! Necesse est temptāre; nisi temptābimus, Achaeī ita dīcent: "Ubi est virtūs eōrum quī Pēnelopam in mātrimōnium dūcere volunt?" Nec frūstrā equidem, ut putō, temptābō. Heus, Eumaee, dā mihi arcum.

[*Antinous cōnātur nervum arcuī aptāre; nē flectere quidem arcum potest.*
*Dum cēterī procī temptant, Ulīxēs Eumaeum retrahit.*]

ULI. Nōlī exclāmāre; sed audī quod dīcam. Ulīxēs in 190
hōc ātriō adest; ego enim sum Ulīxēs. Nōnne crēdis? Spectā igitur signum quod in crūre semper habeō.

EUM. Ō cāre domine! signum enim haud dubium agnōscō. Fugam pete, precor; nisi fugiēs, procī mox tē occīdent.

ULI. Nōlī timēre, sed auxilium mihi dā. Refer mihi arcum meum; ego enim sōlus eum flectere possum et sagittās per circulōs mittere. Sī modo arcum manibus meīs tenēbō, lētō meritō procōs mox 200
pūniam.

EUM. [*procō quī arcum jam tenet.*] Redde mihi arcum; mendīcus enim temptāre vult.

PRO. Quam rīdiculus est ille mendīcus! Nūgās aufer!

ANT. Sī mendīcus poterit, Achaeī ita dīcent: "Senex validior est quam Pēnelopae amātōrēs."

TEL. Meus est arcus; redde mihi; etiam mendīcō licet vīrēs ostendere.

[*Ulīxēs arcum accipit et flectere incipit.*]

PRO. Quam aptē arcum tractat! Quam validōs mōnstrat lacertōs! Sōlus arcum flectere potest. Ecce! nunc nervō sagittam aptat. Quam perītē arcum intendit! Nunc mittitur sagitta. Edepol, omnēs per circulōs volāvit.

ULI. Jam aliō cursū sagittās mittam. Ego sum Ulīxēs. Mors tibi adest, Antinoe odiōse! [*Antinoum sagittā trānsfīgit.*] Sīc moriēminī omnēs procī, quī tam diū meum ātrium foedāvistis.

PRO. Ēheu! Mortuus est Antinous. Quō modō effugere poterimus? [*Procī fugere cōnantur.*]

ULI. Eumaee, claude jānuam! [*Eumaeus jānuam claudit.*]

AMPH. [*ante pedēs Ulīxis sē jacit.*] Mihi quidem ignōsce, Ō Ulīxēs! ego enim semper tē amō et ōdī procōs.

ULI. Cūr meō in ātriō mānsistī? Moriēris, stulte! [*Amphinomum trānsfīgit.*] Tēlemache, mī fīlī, et Eumaee, stāte prope mē et auxilium date! Nōs trēs illōs scelerātōs interficiēmus. [*Tēlemachus Eumaeusque arma rapiunt et sē Ulīxī sociōs jungunt.*] Ō dī benignī, renovāte mihi vīrēs, membra mea rōbusta reddite!

[*Intrat Minerva mīlitī similis, arma et tēla gerēns. Prope Ulīxem adstat.*]

MIN. Fortis es, Ō Ulīxēs! Fortūna fortibus favet. Ego prō tē pugnābō.

[*Procōs singulōs occīdunt; omnēs mortuī humī jacent; intrat Pēnelopē et Ulīxem agnōscit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE

# EXERCISES FOR WRITING

PAGES 163-164

1. The sentinels stand in front of the tents of the Etruscans. 2. Romans, fight for your country and for your friends. 3. Senator, remain in the city and warn the citizens. 4. Soldiers, obey, and resist the Etruscans. 5. Attack the enemy suddenly from the rear. 6. Fifty men escaped, and the others were killed.

PAGES 165-166

1. All our weapons are now prepared. 2. We love brave friends, and we fear brave enemies. 3. The sentinels roused all the Etruscans. 4. The king himself speaks; hear and obey. 5. The city is no longer in sight, but we can see the bridge. 6. On the right stands an Etruscan, on the left a Roman.

PAGES 167-168

1. At daybreak we shall approach in silence. 2. We wish to break down the bridge, but time is not given. 3. Three brave Romans appear on the bridge. 4. The city will be defended by Horatius and his brave companions. 5. The citizens will take axes and break down the bridge. 6. A soldier gives an ax to the consul, Valerius.

PAGES 169-170

1. The enemy are led by Sextus, the son of the king. 2. The voice of Sextus is heard, and the Etruscans appear on the bank of the river. 3. We ourselves shall attack the faithless Sextus. 4. The archers will kill many Etruscans. 5. Horatius has a good plan, and the enemy will not kill him. 6. Throw your shields to the citizens. 7. I shall jump into the river and swim to the gate of the city.

PAGES 187-188

1. The gods, by whom our leader is not loved, have brought us into these dangers. 2. The sailors who stand about Eurylochus murmur. 3. The leader will give food to the sailors, who are hungry. 4. I shall kill animals with the bow which I carry. 5. Your leader, who is faithful, will not desert you. 6. The men whom you see are sailors. 7. The deer was killed by an arrow of Ulysses.

PAGES 189-191

1. Lay down these branches on the ground. 2. Ulysses, who was wandering through the forest, saw a deer. 3. The forehead of the deer was pierced by an arrow. 4. The deer had large and beautiful horns. 5. The woman whom you see is Circe. 6. The sailors are seen through the door which is at the left. 7. Perhaps our companions will be found in the halls.

PAGES 192-193

1. The voices of women are heard through the door. 2. The woman who was singing was an enchantress. 3. The flower which was given by Mercury will defend me. 4. Open the door which is at the left. 5. Men, do not drink the wine which Circe has given you. 6. The jar which the servant brings (**ferre**) is full. 7. The golden cups were received by the companions of Ulysses.

PAGES 194-197

1. Rhodius, who had concealed himself behind a column, drank the wine. 2. All the maids were watching Ulysses and his friends. 3. The wine is delicious (sweet), and it will please you. 4. You see no guests here, but you see beasts. 5. We did not throw away the cups which you gave us. 6. We do not see Rhodius, who drank the wine. 7. You have changed Rhodius into the form of a beast—I am certain of this.

PAGES 198-199

1. The sailors see a large cavern, which is the home of Polyphemus. 2. The sheep and goats sleep in the cave at night. 3. Without doubt Ulysses is smaller than this monster. 4. It is best to return to the sea at once. 5. The sailors, who were preparing dinner, saw the monster. 6. These Greeks flee because I am approaching. 7. I shall drive the sheep into the cave, but I shall leave the lambs outside the door.

PAGES 200-201

1. The Cyclops, who is a cruel monster, will eat us all. 2. Ulysses was sitting in the middle of the cave and talking with the sailors. 3. The plan which I have formed is a good one (is good). 4. In the morning the Cyclops will go out from the cave with his flock. 5. My plan does not please the sailors, because they fear Polyphemus. 6. Four sailors have perished, and their friends wish to flee. 7. The wine which I have brought is very good.

PAGES 202-204

1. Polyphemus's eye will be put out by the Greeks with a sharp staff. 2. I cannot twist this staff without help. 3. The gods themselves have chosen the best men. 4. I have asked your name; do not conceal it. 5. The Cyclops will eat nobody tomorrow. 6. Friends, why do you stand outside the door of the cavern? 7. Neptune, who is my father, does not help me.

PAGE 205

1. At daybreak we shall all take flight. 2. We shall drive the sheep to our leader, who will tie them together. 3. This ram, which has a large fleece, will carry our leader. 4. Farewell, friends, whom we shall not see again. 5. You seek us in vain, because you are blind.

PAGES 206-207

1. Troy has been captured, and we are returning home. 2. Eumaeus, who was in the cottage, did not see Minerva. 3. We are the most unfortunate of all the Greeks. 4. The suitors are now happy, and they do not expect your return. 5. The immortal gods will help you, because you have been faithful. 6. Minerva will go away to Sparta, where Menelaus lives.

PAGES 208-210

1. Eumaeus was an old man who had always been faithful to his master. 2. Ulysses had loved this dog, and he recognized him at once. 3. My husband is far away, but I do not despair of him. 4. The servant eats and drinks in the cottage with his sons. 5. My friends will soon return home alive. 6. I have seen an old man who was in this island. 7. The story which you tell is not credible.

PAGE 211

1. I have been changed from a young man into an old man by Minerva. 2. Where is my father, and why has he delayed thus? 3. The suitors saw a beggar, who entered with Telemachus. 4. Hear, O queen, I have seen your son, Telemachus. 5. The people drove your father from his kingdom, but I restored him. 6. What news has Telemachus heard about his father? 7. Your son will not be killed by the cruel suitors. 8. My father is alive, but he has not been seen by Menelaus.

PAGES 212-213

1. I have received bread from you, and I will help you. 2. We will drive this impudent man out of (from) the hall. 3. The gods will punish you (*singular*) because you have been cruel. 4. I offer you a splendid gift, which you do not accept. 5. Dear friend, you see your master here in the hall. 6. The suitor who was holding the bow was not able to bend it. 7. The old man to whom I have given the bow will now show his strength.

PAGES 214-215

1. The door had been closed, and the suitors could not flee. 2. Ulysses will pierce Amphinomus also with an arrow. 3. Telemachus stood near his father and helped him. 4. The gods are kind; for they have restored my strength. 5. The suitors are being killed one by one, and soon they will all lie dead on the ground.

# MEDICUS

PERSŌNAE.

Titus: *puer Rōmānus, duodecim annōs nātus.*
Octāvia: *Titī māter.*

Lūcius } *Titī frātrēs, geminī,*
Pūblius } *septem annōs nātī.*
Medicus.

SCAENA. IN CUBICULŌ PUERŌRUM.

*Ā sinistrā stat lātus lectulus; ibi dormiunt trēs puerī, Titus et Lūcius et Pūblius. Ā dextrā est fenestra, ā tergō jānua. Gallus extrā cantat et puerōs ē somnō excitat.*

TIT. Quota hōra est?

LUC. [*ad fenestram currit.*] Prīma ferē hōra est. Sōl mox surget.

TIT. Ō mē miserum! Pōnsum meum nōn fēcī. Quid Orbilius dīcet?

PUB. Immō vērō, quid faciet Orbilius?

TIT. Jam ferulam sentiō. Ad lūdum īre nōn audeō.

LUC. Gaudeō quia nōndum ad lūdum īmus, ego et Pūblius.

TIT. Quālēs frātrēs estis! Quia vāpulābō, gaudētis.

LUC. ET PUB. [*saltant et cantant.*] Titus vāpulābit; Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. [*irātus.*] Vōs etiam vāpulābitis.

[*Frātrēs loculīs ferit.*]

LUC. ET PUB. [*lacrimant.*] Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit. Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. Quia vōs vāpulāvistis, lacrimātis. Iterum autem lacrimābitis, nisi bonum cōnsilium mihi inveniētis; nam ego vāpulāre hodiē nōlō.

PUB. Cōnsilium habeō.

TIT. ET LUC. Dīc nōbīs.

PUB. Manēte; cōgitō.

TIT. Festīnā, Pūblī; Ō mē miserum, vāpulābō.

LUC. Fortasse malum Pūblius habet cōnsilium; tum vāpulābis, Tite.

TIT. Nisi statim cōnsilium nārrābis, iterum idem accipiēs. [*Oculōs sūmit.*]

PUB. Cōgitāvī. Audīte cōnsilium. Vesperī apud Quīntum cēnābās.

TIT. Illud jam scīmus.

PUB. Bene, ibi nimis ēdistī.

TIT. Quid dīcere vīs? Semper nimis edō; tū quoque et Lūcius.

PUB. Sānē, at tū hodiē aegrōtās, quia nimis vesperī ēdistī.

TIT. At nōn aegrōtō, mī frāter!

LUC. Ō stulte, nōnne intellegis? Hodiē aegrum simulābis.

TIT. Intellegō. Euge, Pūblī! bonum cōnsilium invēnistī! Tū, Lūcī, ī ad mātrem; illī dē morbō meō aliquid nārrā! [*Exit Lūcius.*] Pūblī, in aquam hunc pannum merge! Festīnā! nam mātrem audiō; pannō meōs oculōs preme! Heu! heu! quantum doleō!

[*Octāvia intrat cum Lūciō.*]

OCT. Hercle! Quam aeger es! Quid habēs, mī fīlī?

TIT. Multum doleō. Nunc calidus sum, nunc frīgidus.

OCT. Ō cāre fīlī, medicum arcessam. Quis medicum venīre jubēbit?

LUC. Ego medicum arcessam, mea māter.

PUB. Et ego cum Lūciō ībō.

OCT. Īte, parvulī, et medicāmentum ferre medicum jubēte.

LUC. Acerbum medicāmentum sēcum feret medicus.

PUB. Acerbum medicāmentum. [*Exeunt geminī.*]

TIT. Ut sitiō, māter cārissima!

OCT. Miselle puer! Aquam frīgidam tibi dabō. Bibe!
[*Titus bibit.*]

TIT. Māter, nunc frīgidus sum. Ecce! membra mea tremunt.
OCT. Ēn, vestīmentīs tē tegam.
TIT. Māter, nimis calidus sum.
OCT. Eheu! Quī morbus tē tenet? Quandō medicus veniet?
TIT. Aliquis jānuam pulsat.

[*Medicus cum puerīs intrat.*]

MED. Salvē, domina! Quis aeger est?
OCT. Salvē, medice! Fīlius meus aegrōtat.
MED. Salvē, puer! Aegerne es? [*Titus annuit.*]
LUC. ET PUB. Ita, medice, valdē aeger est.
MED. Num edere potes? [*Titus annuit.*]
LUC. ET PUB. Minimē; nihil edere potest.
MED. Ostende mihi linguam tuam. Hem! Quid herī ēdistī?
TIT. Nesciō, medice.
LUC. Sciō equidem.
PUB. Et ego.
LUC. Apud Quīntum vesperī cēnābat.
PUB. Nimis ēdit—porcum.
LUC. Et pōma.
PUB. Et lība.
LUC. Et alia multa.
OCT. Minimē mīrum, sī hodiē aegrōtās.
MED. Minimē mīrum est. Medicāmentum tibi parābō.
[*Medicus medicāmentum parat.*]

LUC. Quāle medicāmentum parās?
PUB. Acerbumne est annōn?
MED. Acerbum est.
LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est medicāmentum. Acerbum est medicāmentum.

MED. Dā mihi pōculum, domina! [*Fundit.*] Nunc bibe, puer! [*Titus medicāmentum gustat.*]

TIT. Nōlō bibere. Tāle pōculum numquam bibam.

OCT. Ohē, puer improbe! Quō modō aegrōtāre dēsinēs, nisi medicāmentum bibēs?

LIC. ET PUB. Titus bibere nōn vult. Titus bibere nōn vult.

MED. Necesse est bibere.

LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est. Gaudēmus, quia acerbum est medicāmentum.

TIT. Aliquis mox vāpulābit. [*Geminī audiunt et silent.*]

OCT. Statim bibe; sīn minus, patrem vocābō.

TIT. Nōlō. [*Exit Octāvia.*]

PATRIS VOX. Tite, audīsne mē?

TIT. Ita, mī pater.

PATRIS VOX. Nōnne medicāmentum bibere vīs?

TIT. Sānē, mī pater, bibere volō. [*Dum bibit, Octāvia intrat.*]

OCT. Medicāmentum bibit Titus.

MED. Bene; deinde tranquillē dormiēs. Mox validus iterum eris et rōbustus. Valē, domina; valēte, puerī.

OMNES. Valē, medice. [*Exit Medicus.*]

TIT. Jam validior sum. Licetne mihi surgere, māter?

OCT. Nōn licet, Ō stulte. Tōtum diem in lectulō jacēbis. Et ego prope tē manēbō.

TIT. Nōn necesse est tibi, cārissima māter, prope mē manēre.

OCT. Meus es fīlius. Prope tē manēbo, dum aegrōtās.

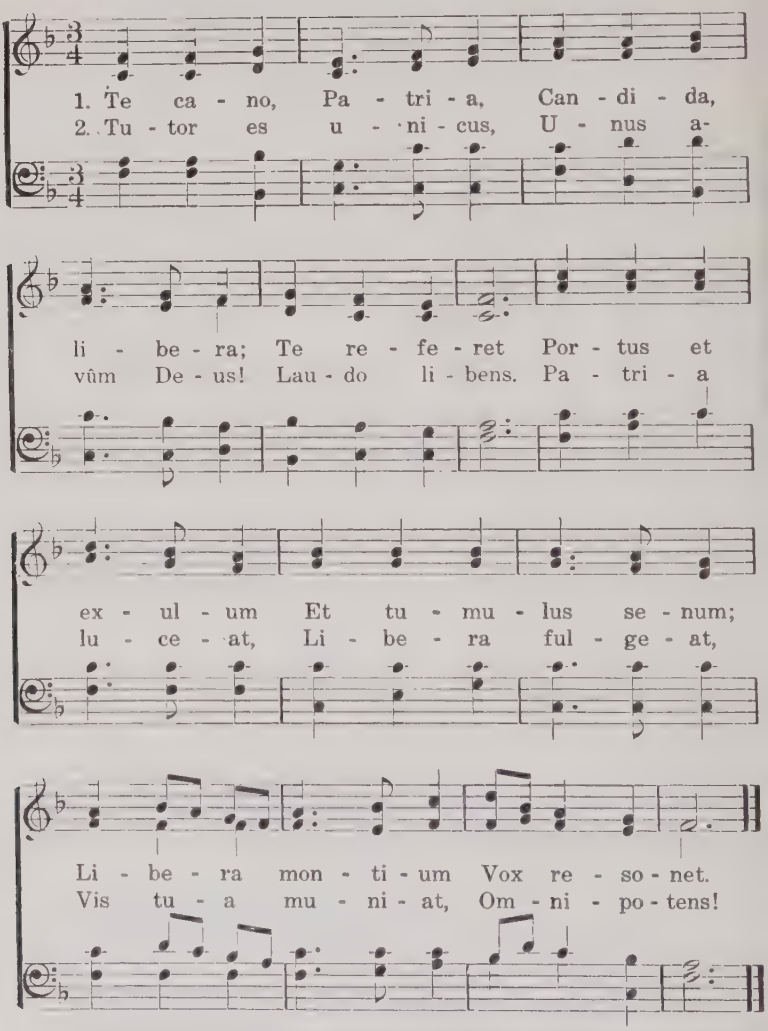
LUC. ET PUB. Licetne nōbīs in hortō lūdere?

OCT. Abīte, geminī, et in hortō lūdite.

LUC. ET PUB. Titus in lectulō manēbit, tōtum diem in lēctulō manēbit. [*Exeunt Lūcius et Pūblius. Titus pugnum agitat.*]

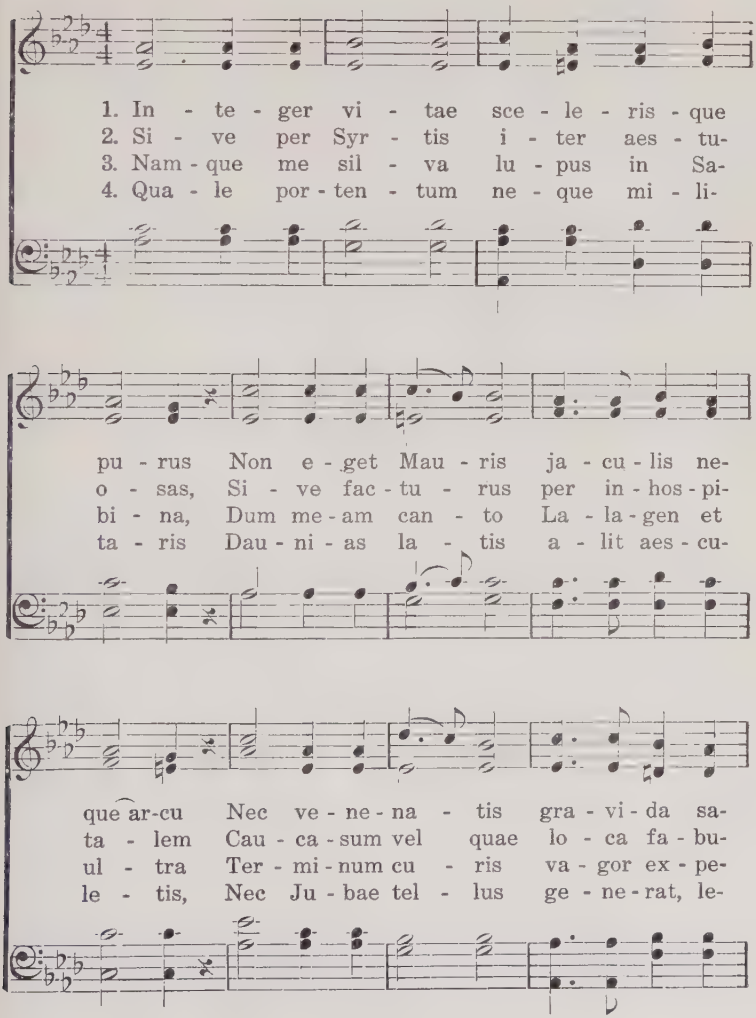
FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

## America

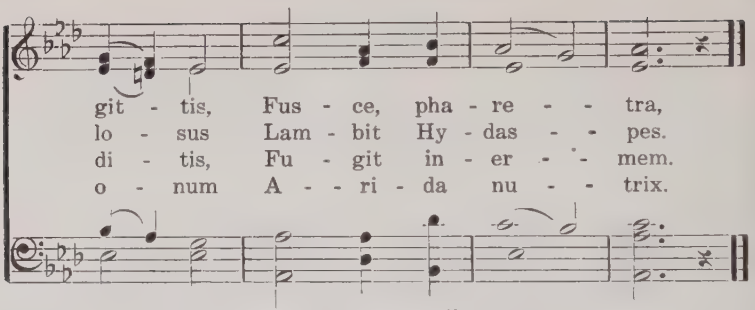
SAMUEL F. SMITH — HENRY CAREY

1. Te ca - no, Pa - tri - a, Can - di - da,
2. Tu - tor es u - ni - cus, U - nus a-
li - be - ra; Te re - fe - ret Por - tus et
vûm De - us! Lau - do li - bens. Pa - tri - a
ex - ul - um Et tu - mu - lus se - num;
lu - ce - at, Li - be - ra ful - ge - at,
Li - be - ra mon - ti - um Vox re - so - net.
Vis tu - a mu - ni - at, Om - ni - po - tens!

The Latin version is by Professor George D. Kellogg, and is printed by permission.

## Integer Vitae[1]

HORATIUS, B.C. 65-8 Fr. F. FLEMMING, c. 1811

1. In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que
2. Si - ve per Syr - tis i - ter aes - tu-
3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa-
4. Qua - le por - ten - tum ne - que mi - li-
pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ja - cu - lis ne-
o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi-
bi - na, Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen et
ta - ris Dau - ni - as la - tis a - lit aes - cu-
que ar-cu Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa-
ta - lem Cau - ca - sum vel quae lo - ca fa - bu-
ul - tra Ter - mi - num cu - ris va - gor ex - pe-
le - tis, Nec Ju - bae tel - lus ge - ne - rat, le-

(1) For English translation see page 229.



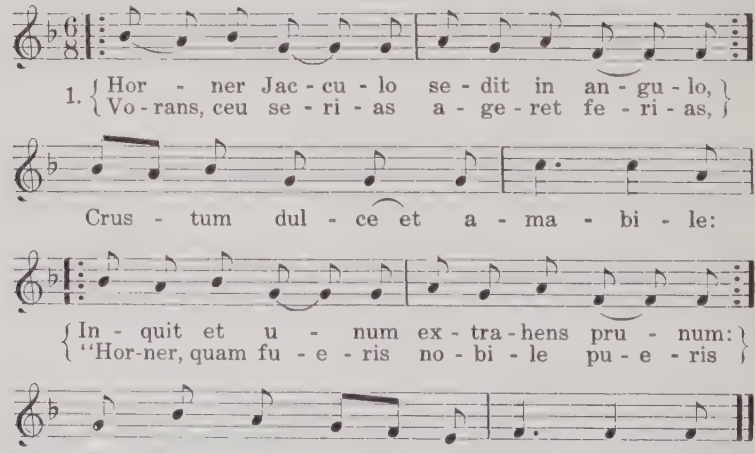

5 Pone me pigris ubi nulla campis
Arbor aestiva recreatur aura,
Quod latus mundi nebulae malusque
Juppiter urget;

6 Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
Solis, in terra domibus negata;
Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo,
Dulce loquentem.

## Horner Jacculo[1]

GAMMER GURTON, English
HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

Old Nursery Tune


1. Hor - ner Jac - cu - lo se - dit in an - gu - lo,
Vo - rans, ceu se - ri - as a - ge - ret fe - ri - as,
Crus - tum dul - ce et a - ma - bi - le:
In - quit et u - num ex - tra - hens pru - num:
"Hor-ner, quam fu - e - ris no - bi - le pu - e - ris
Ex - em - plar i - - mi - ta - bi - le."

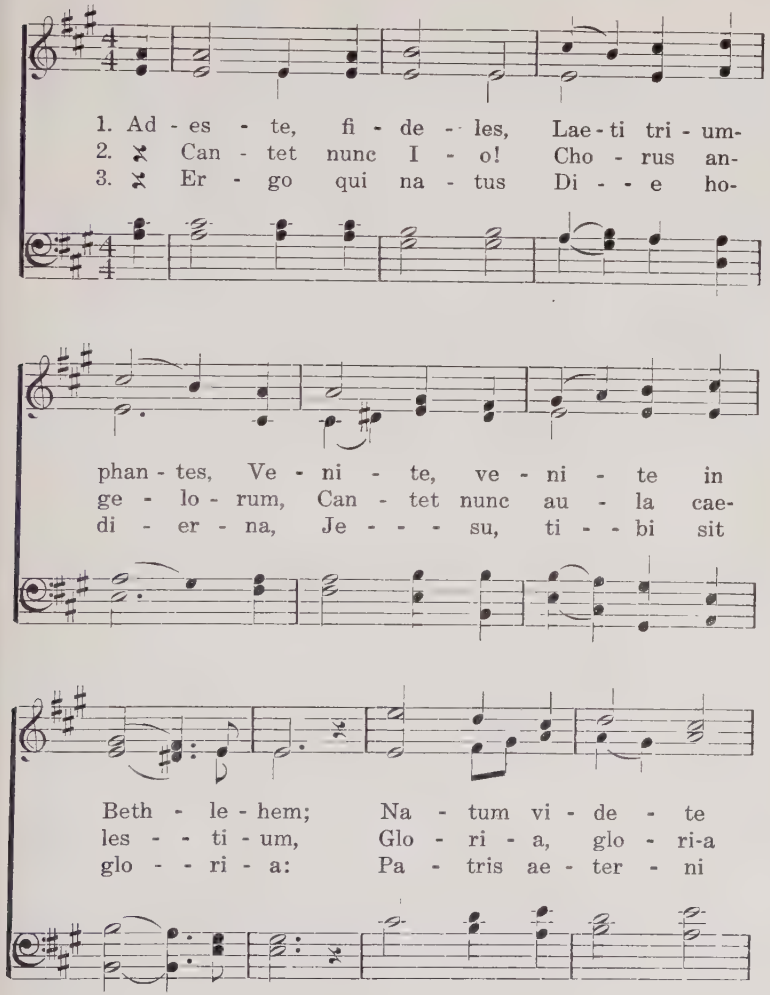
(1) For English words see page 229.

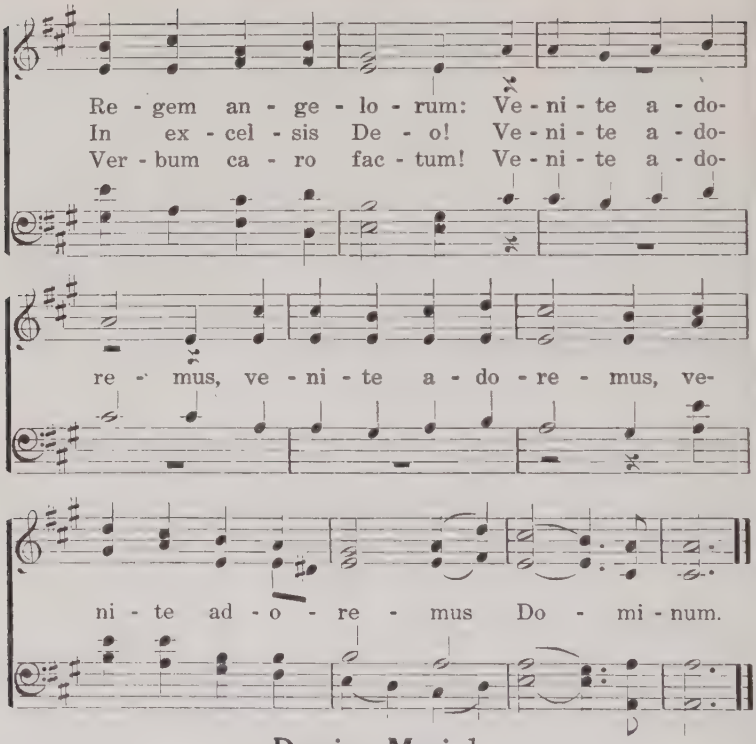
## Adeste Fideles[1]

Author unknown
17th or 18th cent.

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

JOHN READING, d. 1692

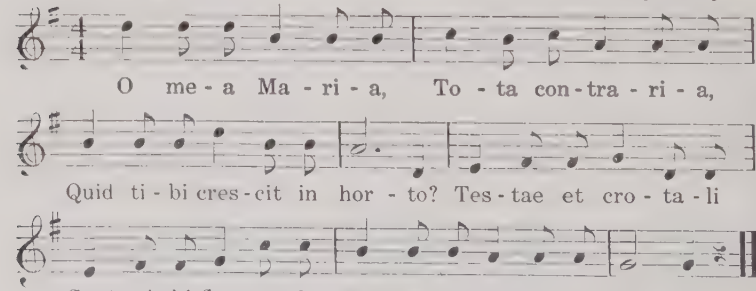

1. Ad - es - te, fi - de - les, Lae - ti tri - um-
2. Can - tet nunc I - o! Cho - rus an-
3. Er - go qui na - tus Di - - e ho-
phan - tes, Ve - ni - te, ve - ni - te in
ge - lo - rum, Can - tet nunc au - la cae-
di - er - na, Je - - - su, ti - - bi sit
Beth - le - hem; Na - tum vi - de - te
les - - ti - um, Glo - ri - a, glo - ri-a
glo - - ri - a: Pa - tris ae - ter - ni

(1) For English words see page 229.

Re - gem an - ge - lo - rum: Ve - ni - te a - do-
In ex - cel - sis De - o! Ve - ni - te a - do-
Ver - bum ca - ro fac - tum! Ve - ni - te a - do-
re - mus, ve - ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve-
ni - te ad - o - re - mus Do - mi - num.

## Domina Maria[1]

GAMMER GURTON, English
HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

Old Nursery Melody




(1) For English words see page 230.

# ENGLISH WORDS OF THE LATIN SONGS

## INTEGER VITAE

The man upright in life and free from guilt, needs not, O Fuscus, Moorish darts nor bow nor quiver loaded with envenomed arrows, whether his journey is to be over the boiling Syrtis or through the inhospitable Caucasus or in the places washed by the Hydaspes, famed in story. For while in the Sabine woods I was singing of my Lalage, and carefree was wandering beyond bounds, a wolf fled from me though I was unarmed. No such monster does the warlike Daunia nourish in its oak forest, nor does the land of Juba, that desert nurse of lions, produce the like. Place me where on the lifeless plains no tree is warmed to new life by the summer breeze, a region over which hang clouds and a gloomy sky; place me beneath the course of the sun as it draws too near the earth, in a land devoid of human dwellings; still will I love Lalage with her sweet smile and her sweet words.

## LITTLE JACK HORNER

Little Jack Horner
Sat in a corner,
Eating a Christmas pie.
He put in his thumb
And pulled out a plum,
And cried, "What a good boy am I!"

## O COME, ALL YE FAITHFUL[1]

O come, all ye faithful, joyfully triumphant;
To Bethlehem hasten now with glad accord.
Lo! in a manger lies the King of angels,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

Raise, raise, choirs of angels, songs of loudest triumph;
Through heaven's high arches be your praises poured.
Now to our God be glory in the highest;
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

[1] The words of this hymn are based upon the Latin hymn *Adeste Fideles*, but they are not an exact translation.

Amen, Lord, we bless Thee, born for our salvation;
O Jesus, forever be Thy name adored;
Word of the Father, late in flesh appearing,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

### MISTRESS MARY

Mistress Mary,
Quite contrary,
How does your garden grow?
With silver bells
And cockle-shells
And hyacinths all of a row.

# APPENDIX

## THE DERIVATION OF LATIN WORDS

**1.** Many Latin words are derived from other Latin words by the use of syllables or letters placed at the beginning or at the end of these words. A syllable placed at the beginning of a word is called a Prefix; a syllable placed at the end is called a Suffix. Words formed with a particular prefix or suffix regularly have special meanings given them by the prefix or suffix with which they are formed. But occasionally changes of meaning take place, so that it is not always easy to see the relation between the meaning of a word and that of the word from which it is derived.

The use of some of the most important prefixes and suffixes is as follows:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tor** (occasionally **-sor**) indicate the person who does the act expressed by the verb from which they are derived: **victor,** *a conqueror,* from **vincō.**

*a.* Such nouns may be formed from **moneō, capiō, dūcō, audiō,** and many other verbs.

*b.* These nouns in **-tor** and **-sor** are masculine. There is a corresponding feminine form, ending in **-trīx: victrīx, adiūtrīx, administrātrīx.**

(2) Names of qualities are formed from adjective stems, with the endings **-tās** and **-tūdō,** and from adjective or noun stems with the ending **-tūs.** These nouns are all feminine:

**lībertās,** *freedom,* from **līber.**
**magnitūdō,** *greatness,* from **magnus.**
**virtūs,** *manliness, courage,* from **vir.**

*a.* Nouns with the ending **-tās** may be formed from **gravis,** *heavy,* **levis,** *light,* **nōbilis,** *well-known, noble.* Some of these words came to be used as collective nouns, indicating a group of persons possessing the quality named: **nōbilitās,** originally *celebrity,* came to mean *the prominent persons* of a state.

*b.* Nouns with the ending **-tūdō** may be formed from **lātus,** *broad,* **altus,** *high,* **fortis,** *brave.*

*c.* Other nouns formed like **virtūs** are **servitūs,** *slavery,* from **servus; senectūs,** *old age,* from **senex** (*old*).

(3) Nouns formed with the ending **-lus** (**-ulus, -ellus, -illus**) are diminutives; that is, they indicate a small object. The ending is really an adjective ending, but most of the words thus derived have come to be used as nouns:

**fīliolus,** *a little son,* from **fīlius.**
**rēgulus,** *a petty king, chieftain* from **rēx** (stem **rēg-**).

*a.* Nouns ending in **-r** change the final **r** to **l** when **-lus** is added: **libellus,** *a little book,* from **liber; agellus,** *a little field,* from **ager.**

(4) Adjectives ending in **-ōsus** are formed from nouns, and mean *full of* or *abounding in* that which is named by the nouns from which they are derived:

**perīculōsus,** *full of danger, dangerous,* from **perīculum.**
**annōsus,** *full of years, aged,* from **annus.**

*a.* An adjective meaning *abounding in space* may be derived from **spatium.**

(5) Adjectives ending in **-īlis, -ālis, -ārius,** are formed from nouns and mean, originally, *belonging to, connected with,* etc., that which is denoted by the noun from which they are derived.

**hostīlis,** *hostile,* from **hostis.**
**mortālis,** *mortal,* from **mors.**
**legiōnārius,** *legionary,* from **legiō.**

(6) There are also certain syllables used as prefixes with special meanings.

*a.* The syllable **re-** or **red-** means *back* or *again:*

**redīre,** *to come back.* **rescrībere,** *to write in reply.*

*b.* Sometimes the prefix seems to have lost its force, leaving no appreciable difference between the simple verb and the derivative: **manēre, remanēre.**

(7) The syllable **in-** prefixed to adjectives means *not:*

**injūstus,** *not just.*
**indignus,** *not worthy.*

*a.* In English derivatives from these words the prefix usually becomes *un-: unjust, uncommon.* But sometimes it keeps its original form: *incapable, incorrect.*

*b.* The Latin preposition **in,** meaning *in, on,* or *against,* used to form compound verbs, is a different word.

(8) The syllable **per-** used with adjectives and adverbs means *very:*

**perfacilis,** *very easy.*
**permultī,** *very many.*

*a.* **per** when used with verbs means *through* or else serves to emphasize the meaning of the verb:

**perrumpere,** *to break through.*
**perfruī,** *to enjoy thoroughly.*

(9) The syllable **dis-** or **dī-** used with verbs means *apart:*

**discēdere,** *to go apart.*
**dīmittere,** *to send apart* or *away.*

(10) Most prepositions are used as prefixes to form compound verbs, usually with their original meaning. Sometimes, however, they serve merely to emphasize.

**ēdūcere,** *to lead out.*
**trānseō,** *to go across.*

## THE FORMATION OF ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN

### TERMINATIONS DERIVED FROM LATIN

**2.** As has already been stated (Lesson I), certain changes in spelling have occurred in many of the Latin words which have been taken into English. These changes in many instances have affected the endings and have given us English terminations which appear in a large number of words of different groups. These English terminations are not derived from the nominative ending of the Latin word, but for convenience the Latin nominative is given in the lists of words which follow, to indicate the general classes to which the nouns belong. Some of the most important of these terminations are as follows:

#### NOUN ENDINGS

(1) *-ty* from **-tās** (gen. **-tātis**)

*liberty* from **lībertās**; *dignity* from **dignitās**; *humanity* from **hūmānitās.**

(2) *-y, -ce, -cy* from **-ia** or **-tia.**

*victory* from **victōria**; *infamy* from **īnfāmia**; *temperance* from **temperantia**; *eloquence* from **ēloquentia**; *constancy* from **cōnstantia**; *frequency* from **frequentia.**

*a.* Some words ending in *-y* or *-e* are derived from words in **-ium**: *subsidy* from **subsidium**; *study* from **studium**; *vestige* from **vestigium**; *edifice* from **aedificium.**

(3) *-tude* from **-tūdō** (gen. **-tūdinis**).

*multitude* from **multitūdō**, *altitude* from **altitūdō.**

(4) *-tor* from **-tor** (gen. **-tōris**).

The words *orator, victor, dictator,* etc., have the same form in Latin as in English.

(5) *-ion* from **-iō** (gen. **-iōnis**).

*nation* from **nātiō**; *occasion* from **occāsiō**; *station* from **statiō**.

(6) *-ure* from **-ūra**.

*nature* from **nātūra**; *stature* from **statūra**; *culture* from **cultūra**.

(7) *-ment* from **-mentum**.

*ornament* from **ōrnāmentum**; *document* from **documentum**; *monument* from **monumentum**.

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

(8) *-il, -ile* from **-īlis**.

*civil* from **cīvīlis**; *hostile* from **hostīlis**; *servile* from **servīlis**.

(9) *-al* from **-ālis**.

*immortal* from **immortālis**; *mural* from **mūrālis**; *triumphal* from **triumphālis**.

(10) *-ar* from **-āris**.

*consular* from **cōnsulāris**; *familiar* from **familiāris**; *singular* from **singulāris**.

(11) *-ary* from **-ārius**.

*legionary* from **legiōnārius**; *mercenary* from **mercēnārius**; *necessary* from **necessārius**.

(12) *-ose, -ous* from **-ōsus**.

*bellicose* from **bellicōsus**; *copious* from **copiōsus**; *seditious* from **sēditiōsus**.

(13) *-an* (*-ane*) from **-ānus**.

*Roman* from **Rōmānus**; *veteran* from **veterānus**; *human* (also *humane*) from **hūmānus**.

(14) *-id* from **-idus**.

*horrid* from **horridus**; *frigid* from **frīgidus**; *pallid* from **pallidus**.

(15) *-ent* from **-ēns** (gen. **-entis**).

*frequent* from **frequēns**; *patient* from **patiēns**; *innocent* from **innocēns**; *silent* from **silēns**.

*a.* These Latin forms in **-ēns** are mainly participles.

(16) *-ior* (*-or*) from **-ior.**

*exterior, interior, junior, senior, superior, inferior, major, minor.* These are comparative adjectives, and are taken from Latin without change of form.

VERB ENDING

(17) *-ate* from participial forms in **-ātum.**

*create* from **creō** (**creātum**); *demonstrate* from **dēmōnstrō** (**dēmōnstrātum**); *migrate* from **migrō** (**migrātum**); *narrate* from **nārrō** (**nārrātum**).

NOTE. Some English words which are formed with the endings given above are not derived directly from the Latin forms which they most closely resemble. When these endings had come to be used extensively in English, they were sometimes employed in the formation of new words from other English words. But the endings were originally derived from the Latin.

PREFIXES

**3.** The use of Latin prepositions as prefixes in the formation of other words is very important. Many words formed with these prefixes have been taken into English, and the prefixes are sometimes used with English words to form new words. The spelling of these prepositions was sometimes changed because of the first letter of the word with which they were used. Thus **adficiō,** from **ad** and **faciō** became **afficiō,** hence we have *affect* from the past participle **affectus.** In like manner *occur* is derived from **occurrō,** which is the compound of **ob** and **currō.** The most important prepositions used as prefixes in English derivatives are the following:

(1) **ā, ab** (**abs**), *away from, from.*
avert, absent.

(2) **ad** (sometimes becoming *ac, af, ag, al, ap, ar*), *to.*
adhere, acquire, affable, aggression, allusion, approve, arrogant.

(3) **ante,** *before.*
antecedent.

(4) **circum,** *around.*
circumnavigate.

(5) **cum,** as a prefix appearing as **com** (sometimes becoming *con, col, cor, co*), *with.*
composition, contract, collect, correct, coöperate.

(6) **contrā,** *against.*
contradict.

(7) **dē,** *from, down, about.*
depend, decline, describe.

(8) **ex, ē,** *out, out of, from.*
expose, elect, evade.

(9) **extrā,** *beyond.*
extraordinary, extradition.

(10) **in** (sometimes becoming *il, im, ir*), *in, into.*
invade, illusion, immigrant, irrigate.

(11) **inter, intro,** *between, among.*
intervene, intermission, introduction.

(12) **ob** (sometimes becoming *oc, of, op*), *against.*
observe, occur, offer, oppress.

(13) **per,** *through.*
pervade, perforate.

(14) **post,** *after.*
postpone, postscript.

(15) **prae** (in English derivatives regularly *pre*), *before.*
prefix, predict, precede.

(16) **prō,** *before, for, in favor of.*
proceed, profess.

(17) **sub** (sometimes becoming *suc, suf, sup*); *under.*
submit, succeed, suffer, support.

(18) **super,** *above.*
superintend, superfluous.

(19) **trāns** (sometimes becoming *tra*), *beyond.*
transport, transition, traverse.

*a*. In addition to the prepositions which have been given above, there are a few Latin prefixes which are never used as separate words. The most important of these are the following:

(1) **di-, dis-,** *apart, not.*
distract, dissimilar, discontent.

(2) **in-** (a different word from the preposition), *not.*
inevitable, incompetent.

(3) **re-, red,** *back, again.*
retract, redemption.

(4) **sē-,** *apart.*
secede, seclude.

## FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

*Ad astra per aspera,* To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).

*Ad utrumque parātus,* Prepared for either event.

*Alter ego est amīcus,* A friend is one's second self.

*Aurī sacra famēs,* Accursed greed for gold.

*Ē plūribus ūnum,* One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).

*Ex animō,* Sincerely.

*Esse quam vidērī,* To be rather than to seem.

*Fāta viam invenient,* The fates will find a way.

*Ferē libenter homínēs id quod volunt crēdunt,* Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.

*Fīat lūx,* Let there be light.

*Fīat iūstitia,* Let justice be done.

*Fortēs fortūna iuvat,* Fortune favors the brave.

*Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō*, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.

*Horribile dictū*, Horrible to relate.

*In hōc signō vincēs*, In this sign you shall conquer.

*Labōrāre est ōrāre*, To labor is to pray.

*Labor omnia vincit*, Toil conquers all things.

*Mēns sāna in corpore sānō*, A sound mind in a sound body.

*Mēns sibi cōnscia rēctī*, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.

*Mīrābile dictū*, Wonderful to say.

*Montānī semper līberī*, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).

*Nōn prōgredī est regredī* Not to go forward is to go backward.

*Nōn sibi sed omnibus*, Not for one's self but for all.

*Pāce tuā*, With your permission.

*Possunt quia posse videntur*, They can because they think they can.

*Quod erat dēmōnstrandum* (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be proved.

*Semper parātus*, Always ready.

*Sīc ītur ad astra*, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

*Sīc semper tyrannīs*, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

*Sīc trānsit glōria mundī*, Thus passes away the glory of the world.

*Sine diē*, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).

*Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs*, The times change and we change with them (in them).

*Vincit quī patitur*, He conquers who endures.

*Vincit quī sē vincit*, He conquers who conquers himself.

## VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES

**4.** The following vocabulary of grammatical terms, together with a few additional words, is given for the convenience of teachers who may wish to use Latin in giving directions for the work of the class room.

noun, *nōmen*
adjective, *adjectīvum*
pronoun, *prōnōmen*
verb, *verbum*,
adverb, *adverbium*
preposition, *praepositiō*
conjunction, *conjūnctiō*
interjection, *interjectiō*
case, *cāsus*
  nominative, *nōminātīvus*
  genitive, *genitīvus*
  dative, *datīvus*
  accusative, *accūsātīvus*
  ablative, *ablātīvus*
  vocative, *vocātīvus*
gender, *genus*
  masculine, *masculīnum*
  feminine, *fēminīnum*
  neuter, *neutrum*
person, *persōna*
  first, *prīma*
  second, *secunda*
  third, *tertia*
number, *numerus*
  singular, *singulāris*
  plural, *plūrālis*
tense, *tempus*
  present, *praesēns*
  imperfect, *imperfectum*
  future, *futūrum*
  perfect, *perfectum*
  past perfect, *praeteritum perfectum*
  future perfect, *futūrum perfectum*
voice, *vōx*
  active, *actīva*
  passive, *passīva*
mood, *modus*
  indicative, *indicātīvus*
  imperative, *imperātīvus*
  infinitive, *īnfinītīvus*
  subjunctive, *subjūnctīvus*
deponent, *dēpōnēns*
transitive, *trānsitīvum*
intransitive, *intrānsitīvum*
impersonal, *impersōnāle*
conjugation, *conjugātiō*
declension, *dēclīnātiō*
blackboard, *tabula, -ae*
paper, *charta*
chalk, *crēta*
pencil, *stīlus*
question, *interrogātiō*
answer, *respōnsum*
decline, *dēclīnō*
conjugate, *conjugō*

# SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

## NOUNS

### 5. FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| *Nom.* | rosa | rosae |
| *Gen.* | rosae | rosārum |
| *Dat.* | rosae | rosīs |
| *Acc.* | rosam | rosās |
| *Abl.* | rosā | rosīs |

### 6. SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems

*Singular*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | amīcus | puer | ager | vir | templum |
| *G.* | amīcī | puerī | agrī | virī | templī |
| *D.* | amīcō | puerō | agrō | virō | templō |
| *Ac.* | amīcum | puerum | agrum | virum | templum |
| *Ab.* | amīcō | puerō | agrō | virō | templō |

*Plural*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | amīcī | puerī | agrī | virī | templa |
| *G.* | amīcōrum | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | templōrum |
| *D.* | amīcīs | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | templīs |
| *Ac.* | amīcōs | puerōs | agrōs | virōs | templa |
| *Ab.* | amīcīs | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | templīs |

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: **amīce.**

## 7. THIRD DECLENSION

### (1) CONSONANT STEMS

*Singular*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | lēx | mīles | frāter | homō |
| *G.* | lēgis | mīlitis | frātris | hominis |
| *D.* | lēgī | mīlitī | frātrī | hominī |
| *Ac.* | lēgem | mīlitem | frātrem | hominem |
| *Ab.* | lēge | mīlite | frātre | homine |

*Plural*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | lēgēs | mīlitēs | frātrēs | hominēs |
| *G.* | lēgum | mīlitum | frātrum | hominum |
| *D.* | lēgibus | mīlitibus | frātribus | hominibus |
| *Ac.* | lēgēs | mīlitēs | frātrēs | hominēs |
| *Ab.* | lēgibus | mīlitibus | frātribus | hominibus |

NOTE. Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx**, nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps**, nominative from the stem **prīncip-**; **mīles**, nominative from the stem **mīlit-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr.**

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

| | | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | flūmen | caput | corpus | iter |
| *G.* | flūminis | capitis | corporis | itineris |
| *D.* | flūminī | capitī | corporī | itinerī |
| *Ac.* | flūmen | caput | corpus | iter |
| *Ab.* | flūmine | capite | corpore | itinere |
| | | *Plural* | | |
| *N.* | flūmina | capita | corpora | itinera |
| *G.* | flūminum | capitum | corporum | itinerum |
| *D.* | flūminibus | capitibus | corporibus | itineribus |
| *Ac.* | flūmina | capita | corpora | itinera |
| *Ab.* | flūminibus | capitibus | corporibus | itineribus |

NOTE.—Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

(2) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

| | | *Singular* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | collis | caedes | nox |
| *G.* | collis | caedis | noctis |
| *D.* | collī | caedī | noctī |
| *Ac.* | collem | caedem | noctem |
| *Ab.* | colle | caede | nocte |
| | | *Plural* | |
| *N.* | collēs | caedēs | noctēs |
| *G.* | collium | caedium | noctium |
| *D.* | collibus | caedibus | noctibus |
| *Ac.* | collīs (-ēs) | caedīs (-ēs) | noctīs (-ēs) |
| *Ab.* | collibus | caedibus | noctibus |

| | | *Singular* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | īnsigne | exemplar | animal |
| *G.* | īnsignis | exemplāris | animālis |
| *D.* | īnsignī | exemplārī | animālī |
| *Ac.* | īnsigne | exemplar | animal |
| *Ab.* | īnsignī | exemplārī | animālī |
| | | *Plural* | |
| *N.* | īnsignia | exemplāria | animālia |
| *G.* | īnsignium | exemplārium | animālium |
| *D.* | īnsignibus | exemplāribus | animālibus |
| *Ac.* | īnsignia | exemplāria | animālia |
| *Ab.* | īnsignibus | exemplāribus | animālibus |

(3) IRREGULAR NOUNS

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | vīs | vīrēs | bōs | bovēs |
| *G.* | — | vīrium | bovis | boum |
| *D.* | — | vīribus | bovī | būbus *or* bōbus |
| *Ac.* | vim | vīrīs *or* -ēs | bovem | bovēs |
| *Ab.* | vī | vīribus | bove | būbus *or* bōbus |

## 8. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | exercitus | exercitūs | cornū | cornua |
| *G.* | exercitūs | exercituum | cornūs | cornuum |
| *D.* | exercituī *or* -ū | exercitibus | cornū | cornibus |
| *Ac.* | exercitum | exercitūs | cornū | cornua |
| *Ab.* | exercitū | exercitibus | cornū | cornibus |

## 9. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | diēs | diēs | rēs | rēs |
| *G.* | diēī | diērum | reī | rērum |
| *D.* | diēī | diēbus | reī | rēbus |
| *Ac.* | diem | diēs | rem | rēs |
| *Ab.* | diē | diēbus | rē | rēbus |

## ADJECTIVES

### 10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

#### (1) **bonus,** *good*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | bonus | bona | bonum | bonī | bonae | bona |
| *G.* | bonī | bonae | bonī | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| *D.* | bonō | bonae | bonō | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |
| *Ac.* | bonum | bonam | bonum | bonōs | bonās | bona |
| *Ab.* | bonō | bonā | bonō | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |

#### (2) **miser,** *unhappy*

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | miser | misera | miserum |
| *G.* | miserī | miserae | miserī |
| *D.* | miserō | miserae | miserō |
| *Ac.* | miserum | miseram | miserum |
| *Ab.* | miserō | miserā | miserō |
| | *Plural* | | |
| *N.* | miserī | miserae | misera |
| *G.* | miserōrum | miserārum | miserōrum |
| *D.* | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |
| *Ac.* | miserōs | miserās | misera |
| *Ab.* | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |

#### (3) **pulcher,** *beautiful*

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| *G.* | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchrī |
| *D.* | pulchrō | pulchrae | pulchrō |
| *Ac.* | pulchrum | pulchram | pulchrum |
| *Ab.* | pulchrō | pulchrā | pulchrō |

| | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchra |
| *G.* | pulchrōrum | pulchrārum | pulchrōrum |
| *D.* | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |
| *Ac.* | pulchrōs | pulchrās | pulchra |
| *Ab.* | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |

## 11. THIRD DECLENSION

### (1) THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

**ācer,** *sharp*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | ācer | ācris | ācre | ācrēs | ācrēs | ācria |
| *G.* | ācris | ācris | ācris | ācrium | ācrium | ācrium |
| *D.* | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |
| *Ac.* | ācrem | ācrem | ācre | ācrīs, -ēs | ācrīs,-ēs | ācria |
| *Ab.* | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |

### (2) TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-STEMS)

**omnis,** *all*

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | omnis | omne | omnēs | omnia |
| *G.* | omnis | omnis | omnium | omnium |
| *D.* | omnī | omnī | omnibus | omnibus |
| *Ac.* | omnem | omne | omnīs *or* -ēs | omnia |
| *Ab.* | omnī | omnī | omnibus | omnibus |

### (3) ONE TERMINATION

**fēlīx,** *fortunate* **potēns,** *powerful*

*Singular*

| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | fēlīx | fēlīx | potēns | potēns |
| *G.* | fēlīcis | fēlīcis | potentis | potentis |
| *D.* | fēlīcī | fēlīcī | potentī | potentī |
| *Ac.* | fēlīcem | felīx | potentem | potēns |
| *Ab.* | fēlīcī | fēlīcī | potentī, -e | potentī -e |

| | | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | fēlīcēs | fēlīcia | potentēs | potentia |
| *G.* | fēlīcium | fēlīcium | potentium | potentium |
| *D.* | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | potentibus | potentibus |
| *Ac.* | fēlīcīs, -ēs | fēlīcia | potentīs, -ēs | potentia |
| *Ab.* | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | potentibus | potentibus |

## 12. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | portāns | portāns | portantēs | portantia |
| *G.* | portantis | portantis | portantium | portantium |
| *D.* | portantī | portantī | portantibus | portantibus |
| *Ac.* | portantem | portāns | portantīs, -ēs | portantia |
| *Ab.* | portante (-ī) | portante (-ī) | portantibus | portantibus |

## 13. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

| | **alius** | | **ūnus** | | **alter** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **sōlus** | | **tōtus** | | **neuter** | |
| | **ūllus** | | **nūllus** | | **uter** | |
| *N.* | sōlus | sōla | sōlum | alter | altera | alterum |
| *G.* | sōlīus | sōlīus | sōlīus | alterīus | alterīus | alterīus |
| *D.* | sōlī | sōlī | sōlī | alterī | alterī | alterī |
| *Ac.* | sōlum | sōlam | sōlum | alterum | alteram | alterum |
| *Ab.* | sōlō | sōlā | sōlō | alterō | alterā | alterō |

(*The plurals are like those of* **bonus** *and* **miser.**)

## 14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| lātus | lātior, lātius | lātissimus, -a, -um |
| fortis | fortior, fortius | fortissimus, -a, -um |
| fēlīx | fēlīcior, fēlīcius | fēlīcissimus, -a, -um |
| miser | miserior, miserius | miserrimus, -a, -um |
| facilis | facilior, facilius | facillimus, -a, -um |

## 15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| bonus | melior, melius | optimus, -a, -um |
| malus | pejor, pejus | pessimus, -a, -um |
| magnus | major, majus | maximus, -a, -um |
| parvus | minor, minus | minimus, -a, -um |
| multus | —, plūs | plūrimus, -a, -um |

## 16. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

**lātior,** *broader*

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | lātior | lātius | lātiōrēs | lātiōra |
| *G.* | lātiōris | lātiōris | lātiōrum | lātiōrum |
| *D.* | lātiōrī | lātiōrī | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |
| *Ac.* | lātiōrem | lātius | lātiōrēs | lātiōra |
| *Ab.* | lātiōre | lātiōre | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |

**plūs,** *more*

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | ——— | plūs | plūrēs | plūra |
| *G.* | ——— | plūris | plūrium | plūrium |
| *D.* | ——— | —— | plūribus | plūribus |
| *Ac.* | ——— | plūs | plūrīs *or* -ēs | plūra |
| *Ab.* | ——— | —— | plūribus | plūribus |

## 17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| lātē | lātius | lātissimē |
| fortiter | fortius | fortissimē |
| ācriter | ācrius | ācerrimē |
| facile | facilius | facillimē |

## 18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| bene | melius | optimē |
| male | pejus | pessimē |
| magnopere | plūs | maximē |
| multum | magis | plūrimum |
| parum | minus | minimē |
| prope | propius | proximē |
| saepe | saepius | saepissimē |
| diū | diūtius | diūtissimē |

## 19. NUMERALS

| *Roman Numerals* | *Cardinal* | *Ordinal* |
|---|---|---|
| I. | ūnus, -a, -um | prīmus, -a, -um |
| II. | duo, -ae, -o | secundus *or* alter |
| III. | trēs, tria | tertius |
| IV. | quattuor | quārtus |
| V. | quīnque | quīntus |
| VI. | sex | sextus |
| VII. | septem | septimus |
| VIII. | octō | octāvus |
| IX. | novem | nōnus |
| X. | decem | decimus |
| XI. | ūndecim | ūndecimus |
| XII. | duodecim | duodecimus |
| XIII. | tredecim | tertius decimus |
| XIV. | quattuordecim | quārtus decimus |
| XV. | quīndecim | quīntus decimus |
| XVI. | sēdecim | sextus decimus |
| XVII. | septendecim | septimus decimus |
| XVIII. | duodēvīgintī | duodēvīcēsimus |
| XIX. | ūndēvīgintī | ūndēvīcēsimus |
| XX. | vīgintī | vīcēsimus |
| XXI. | ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus) | vīcēsimus prīmus |
| XXVIII | duodētrīgintā | duodētrīcēsimus |
| XXIX. | ūndētrīgintā | ūndētrīcēsimus |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| XXX. | trīgintā | trīcēsimus |
| XL. | quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsimus |
| L. | quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsimus |
| LX. | sexāgintā | sexāgēsimus |
| LXX. | septuāgintā | septuāgēsimus |
| LXXX. | octōgintā | octōgēsimus |
| XC. | nōnāgintā | nōnāgēsimus |
| C. | centum | centēsimus |
| CI. | centum (et) ūnus | centēsimus (et) prīmus |
| CC. | ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsimus |
| CCC. | trecentī | trecentēsimus |
| CCCC. | quadringentī | quadringentēsimus |
| D. | quīngentī | quīngentēsimus |
| DC. | sescentī | sescentēsimus |
| DCC. | septingentī | septingentēsimus |
| DCCC. | octingentī | octingentēsimus |
| DCCCC. | nōngentī | nōngentēsimus |
| M. | mīlle | mīllēsimus |
| MM. | duo mīlia | bis mīllēsimus |

*a.* DECLENSION OF **DUO**, **TRĒS**, and **MĪLIA**

**duo**, *two*

| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | duo | duae | duo |
| *G.* | duōrum | duārum | duōrum |
| *D.* | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |
| *Ac.* | duōs, duo | duās | duo |
| *Ab.* | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |

**trēs**, *three*

| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|
| *N.* | trēs | tria |
| *G.* | trium | trium |
| *D.* | tribus | tribus |
| *Ac.* | trēs, trīs | tria |
| *Ab.* | tribus | tribus |

**mīlia**, N., *thousands*

| | *Neut.* |
|---|---|
| *N.* | mīlia |
| *G.* | mīlium |
| *D.* | mīlibus |
| *Ac.* | mīlia |
| *Ab.* | mīlibus |

## PRONOUNS

### 20. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, **ego,** *I* Second person, **tū,** *you* (*thou*)

| | *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | ego | nōs | tū | vōs |
| *G.* | meī | nostrum<br>nostrī | tuī | vestrum<br>vestrī |
| *D.* | mihi | nōbīs | tibi | vōbīs |
| *Ac.* | mē | nōs | tē | vōs |
| *Ab.* | mē | nōbīs | tē | vōbīs |

*a.* There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

### 21. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

| | First person, **meī,** *of myself* | | Second person, **tuī,** *of yourself* | | Third person, **suī,** *of himself, etc.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Sing.* | *Plur.* | *Sing.* | *Plur.* | *Sing.* | *Plur.* |
| *G.* | meī | nostrī | tuī | vestrī | suī | suī |
| *D.* | mihi | nōbīs | tibi | vōbīs | sibi | sibi |
| *Ac.* | mē | nōs | tē | vōs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |
| *Ab.* | mē | nōbīs | tē | vōbīs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |

### 22. POSSESSIVES

*Singular*

*1st pers.* meus, -a, -um, *my*
*2d pers.* tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)
*3d pers.* suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)
ejus (gen. sing. of **is**) *his,* etc. (not reflexive)

*Plural*

*1st pers.* noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
*2d pers.* vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
*3d pers.* suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive); eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (not reflexive)

## 23. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

### (1) **hic,** *this*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | hic | haec | hoc | hī | hae | haec |
| *G.* | hujus | hujus | hujus | hōrum | hārum | hōrum |
| *D.* | huic | huic | huic | hīs | hīs | hīs |
| *Ac.* | hunc | hanc | hoc | hōs | hās | haec |
| *Ab.* | hōc | hāc | hōc | hīs | hīs | hīs |

### (2) **ille,** *that*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | ille | illa | illud | illī | illae | illa |
| *G.* | illīus | illīus | illīus | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| *D.* | illī | illī | illī | illīs | illīs | illīs |
| *Ac.* | illum | illam | illud | illōs | illās | illa |
| *Ab.* | illō | illā | illō | illīs | illīs | illīs |

### (3) **is,** *this, that, he, she, it*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | is | ea | id | iī, eī | eae | ea |
| *G.* | ejus | ejus | ejus | eōrum | eārum | eōrum |
| *D.* | eī | eī | eī | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |
| *Ac.* | eum | eam | id | eōs | eās | ea |
| *Ab.* | eō | eā | eō | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |

## 24. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

**īdem,** *the same*

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | īdem | eadem | idem |
| *G.* | ejusdem | ejusdem | ejusdem |
| *D.* | eīdem | eīdem | eīdem |
| *Ac.* | eundem | eandem | idem |
| *Ab.* | eōdem | eādem | eōdem |

| | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | īdem *or* eīdem | eaedem | eadem |
| *G.* | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| *D.* | īsdem *or* eīsdem | īsdem *or* eīsdem | īsdem *or* eīsdem |
| *Ac.* | eōsdem | eāsdem | eadem |
| *Ab.* | īsdem *or* eīsdem | īsdem *or* eīsdem | īsdem *or* eīsdem |

## 25. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

**ipse,** *self*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | ipse | ipsa | ipsum | ipsī | ipsae | ipsa |
| *G.* | ipsīus | ipsīus | ipsīus | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| *D.* | ipsī | ipsī | ipsī | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |
| *Ac.* | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | ipsōs | ipsās | ipsa |
| *Ab.* | ipsō | ipsā | ipsō | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |

## 26. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**quī,** *who*

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | quī | quae | quod | quī | quae | quae |
| *G.* | cujus | cujus | cujus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| *D.* | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| *Ac.* | quem | quam | quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| *Ab.* | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

## 27. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | quis | quae | quid *or* quod | quī | quae | quae |
| *G.* | cujus | cujus | cujus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| *D.* | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| *Ac.* | quem | quam | quid *or* quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| *Ab.* | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

*a.* In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī.** In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod.**

## 28. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

### (1) **quisque,** *each*

| | *Singular* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | quisque | quaeque | quidque, quodque |
| *G.* | cujusque | cujusque | cujusque |
| *D.* | cuique | cuique | cuique |
| *Ac.* | quemque | quamque | quidque, quodque |
| *Ab.* | quōque | quāque | quōque |

(*The plural is rare*)

### (2) **quisquam,** *anyone*

| | *Singular* | |
|---|---|---|
| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neut.* |
| *N.* | quisquam | quicquam (quidquam) |
| *G.* | cujusquam | cujusquam |
| *D.* | cuiquam | cuiquam |
| *Ac.* | quemquam | quicquam (quidquam) |
| *Ab.* | quōquam | quōquam |

(*Plural lacking*)

(3) **quīdam,** *a certain*

*Singular*

| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | quīdam | quaedam | quiddam (quoddam) |
| *G.* | cujusdam | cujusdam | cujusdam |
| *D.* | cuidam | cuidam | cuidam |
| *Ac.* | quendam | quandam | quiddam (quoddam) |
| *Ab.* | quōdam | quādam | quōdam |

*Plural*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | quīdam | quaedam | quaedam |
| *G.* | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| *D.* | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| *Ac.* | quōsdam | quāsdam | quaedam |
| *Ab.* | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

(4) **aliquis,** *some*

*Singular*

| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | aliquis (aliquī) | aliqua | aliquid (aliquod) |
| *G.* | alicujus | alicujus | alicujus |
| *D.* | alicui | alicui | alicui |
| *Ac.* | aliquem | aliquam | aliquid (aliquod) |
| *Ab.* | aliquō | aliquā | aliquō |

*Plural*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | aliquī | aliquae | aliqua |
| *G.* | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| *D.* | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| *Ac.* | aliquōs | aliquās | aliqua |
| *Ab.* | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

## VERBS

### 29. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

*ACTIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portō, *I carry* | portāmus, *we carry* |
| portās, *you carry* | portātis, *you carry* |
| portat, *he carries* | portant, *they carry* |

IMPERFECT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portābam, *I was carrying* | portābāmus, *we were carrying* |
| portābās, *you were carrying* | portābātis, *you were carrying* |
| portābat, *he was carrying* | portābant, *they were carrying* |

FUTURE

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portābō, *I shall carry* | portābimus, *we shall carry* |
| portābis, *you will carry* | portābitis, *you will carry* |
| portābit, *he will carry* | portābunt, *they will carry* |

PERFECT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portāvī, *I have carried, I carried* | portāvimus, *we have carried*, etc. |
| portāvistī, *you have carried*, etc. | portāvistis, *you have carried*, etc. |
| portāvit, *he has carried*, etc. | portāvērunt, -ēre, *they have carried*, etc. |

PAST PERFECT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portāveram, *I had carried* | portāverāmus, *we had carried* |
| portāverās, *you had carried* | portāverātis, *you had carried* |
| portāverat, *he had carried* | portāverant, *they had carried* |

FUTURE PERFECT

*Singular*

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

*Plural*

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

*Sing.* portā, *carry (thou)* *Plur.* portāte, *carry (ye)*

INFINITIVES

*Pres.* portāre, *to carry*
*Past* portāvisse, *to have carried*
*Fut.* portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

*Pres.* portāns, *carrying* *Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

*G.* portandī, *of carrying*
*D.* portandō, *to (for) carrying*
*Ac.* portandum, *carrying*
*Ab.* portandō *from, by carrying*

## 30. *PASSIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| portor, *I am carried* | portāmur, *we are carried* |
| portāris, -re, *you are carried* | portāminī, *you are carried* |
| portātur, *he is carried* | portantur, *they are carried* |

IMPERFECT

*Singular*

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

*Plural*

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

FUTURE

*Singular*

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

*Plural*

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

*Singular*

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he has been carried*

*Plural*

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

PAST PERFECT

*Singular*

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

*Plural*

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

*Singular*

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

*Plural*

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

INFINITIVES

*Pres.* amārī, *to be loved*
*Past* amātus esse, *to have been loved*
*Fut.* amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLE

*Past* portātus, *having been carried*

ROMAN BUCKLES

## 31. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**
**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**
**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

### *ACTIVE VOICE*

#### INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| moneō | dūcō | capiō | audiō |
| monēs | dūcis | capis | audīs |
| monet | dūcit | capit | audit |
| monēmus | dūcimus | capimus | audīmus |
| monētis | dūcitis | capitis | audītis |
| monent | dūcunt | capiunt | audiunt |

IMPERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēbam | dūcēbam | capiēbam | audiēbam |
| monēbās | dūcēbās | capiēbās | audiēbās |
| monēbat | dūcēbat | capiēbat | audiēbat |
| monēbāmus | dūcēbāmus | capiēbāmus | audiēbāmus |
| monēbātis | dūcēbatis | capiēbātis | audiēbātis |
| monēbant | dūcēbant | capiēbant | audiēbant |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēbō | dūcam | capiam | audiam |
| monēbis | dūcēs | capiēs | audiēs |
| monēbit | dūcet | capiet | audiet |
| monēbimus | dūcēmus | capiēmus | audiēmus |
| monēbitis | dūcētis | capiētis | audiētis |
| monēbunt | dūcent | capient | audient |

PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monuī, etc. | dūxī, etc. | cēpī, etc. | audīvī, etc. |

PAST PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monueram, etc. | dūxeram, etc. | cēperam, etc. | audīveram, etc. |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monuerō, etc. | dūxerō, etc. | cēperō, etc. | audīverō, etc. |

**IMPERATIVE**

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monē | dūc[1] | cape | audī |
| monēte | dūcite | capite | audīte |

**PARTICIPLES**

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēns | dūcēns | capiēns | audiēns |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitūrus | ductūrus | captūrus | audītūrus |

**INFINITIVES**

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēre | dūcere | capere | audīre |

PAST

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monuisse | dūxisse | cēpisse | audīvisse |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitūrus esse | ductūrus esse | captūrus esse | audītūrus esse |

**GERUND**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monendī | dūcendī | capiendī | audiendī |
| monendō | dūcendō | capiendō | audiendō |
| etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

[1] See section **339**, *a*, page 141.

*PASSIVE VOICE*

**32.** INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| moneor | dūcor | capior | audior |
| monēris, -re | dūceris, -re | caperis, -re | audīris, -re |
| monētur | dūcitur | capitur | audītur |
| monēmur | dūcimur | capimur | audīmur |
| monēminī | dūciminī | capiminī | audīminī |
| monentur | dūcuntur | capiuntur | audiuntur |

IMPERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēbar | dūcēbar | capiēbar | audiēbar |
| monēbāris, -re | dūcēbāris, -re | capiēbāris, -re | audiēbāris, -re |
| monēbātur | dūcēbātur | capiēbātur | audiēbātur |
| monēbāmur | dūcēbāmur | capiēbāmur | audiēbāmur |
| monēbāminī | dūcēbāminī | capiēbāminī | audiēbāminī |
| monēbantur | dūcēbantur | capiēbantur | audiēbantur |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monēbor | dūcar | capiar | audiar |
| monēberis, -re | dūcēris, -re | capiēris, -re | audiēris, -re |
| monēbitur | dūcētur | capiētur | audiētur |
| monēbimur | dūcēmur | capiēmur | audiēmur |
| monēbiminī | dūcēminī | capiēminī | audiēminī |
| monēbuntur | dūcentur | capientur | audientur |

PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitus sum | ductus sum | captus sum | audītus sum |

PAST PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitus eram | ductus eram | captus eram | audītus eram |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitus erō | ductus erō | captus erō | audītus erō |

PARTICIPLE

PAST

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitus | ductus | captus | audītus |

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monērī | dūcī | capī | audīrī |

PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitus esse | ductus esse | captus esse | audītus esse |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| monitum īrī | ductum īrī | captum īrī | audītum īrī |

## 33. DEPONENT VERBS

I. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
II. **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
IV. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| I. | II. | III. | IV. |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnor | polliceor | sequor | potior |
| cōnāris, -re | pollicēris, -re | sequeris, -re | potīris, -re |
| cōnātur | pollicētur | sequitur | potītur |
| cōnāmur | pollicēmur | sequimur | potīmur |
| cōnāminī | pollicēminī | sequiminī | potīminī |
| cōnāntur | pollicentur | sequuntur | potiuntur |

IMPERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnābar | pollicēbar | sequēbar | potiēbar |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnābor | pollicēbor | sequar | potiar |

PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātus sum | pollicitus sum | secūtus sum | potītus sum |

PAST PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātus eram | pollicitus eram | secūtus eram | potītus eram |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātus erō | pollicitus erō | secūtus erō | potītus erō |

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnārī | pollicērī | sequī | potīrī |

PAST

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātus esse | pollicitus esse | secūtus esse | potītus esse |

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātūrus esse | pollicitūrus esse | secūtūrus esse | potītūrus esse |

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnāns | pollicēns | sequēns | potiēns |

PAST

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātus | pollicitus | secūtus | potītus |

FUTURE ACTIVE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnātūrus | pollicitūrus | secūtūrus | potītūrus |

GERUND

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōnandī, etc. | pollicendī, etc. | sequendī, etc. | potiendī, etc. |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

### 34. CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

#### INDICATIVE

PRESENT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| sum, *I am* | sumus, *we are* |
| es, *you are* | estis, *you are* |
| est, *he, she, it is* | sunt, *they are* |

IMPERFECT

| | |
|---|---|
| eram, *I was* | erāmus, *we were* |
| erās, *you were* | erātis, *you were* |
| erat, *he, she, it was* | erant, *they were* |

FUTURE

| | |
|---|---|
| erō, *I shall be* | erimus, *we shall be* |
| eris, *you will be* | eritis, *you will be* |
| erit, *he, she, it will be* | erunt, *they will be* |

PERFECT

| | |
|---|---|
| fuī, *I have been, I was* | fuimus, *we have been, we were* |
| fuistī, *you have been, you were* | fuistis, *you have been, you were* |
| fuit, *he, she, it has been, was* | fuērunt *or* -ēre, *they have been, etc.* |

PAST PERFECT

| | |
|---|---|
| fueram, *I had been* | fuerāmus, *we had been* |
| fuerās, *you had been* | fuerātis, *you had been* |
| fuerat, *he, she, it had been* | fuerant, *they had been* |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | |
|---|---|
| fuerō *I shall have been* | fuerimus, *we shall have been* |
| fueris, *you will have been* | fueritis, *you will have been* |
| fuerit, *he, she, it will have been* | fuerint, *they will have been* |

#### IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| *2d pers.* es, *be (thou)* | este, *be (ye)* |

#### PARTICIPLE

*Fut.* futūrus, *about to be*

#### INFINITIVES

*Pres.* esse, *to be*
*Past* fuisse, *to have been*
*Fut.* futūrus esse *or* fore, *to be about to be*

## 35. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

#### INDICATIVE

| PRESENT | | PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| possum | possumus | potuī | potuimus |
| potes | potestis | potuistī | potuistis |
| potest | possunt | potuit | potuērunt |

| IMPERFECT | | PAST PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| poteram | poterāmus | potueram | potuerāmus |
| poterās | poterātis | potuerās | potuerātis |
| poterat | poterant | potuerat | potuerant |

| FUTURE | | FUTURE PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| poterō | poterimus | potuerō | potuerimus |
| poteris | poteritis | potueris | potueritis |
| poterit | poterunt | potuerit | potuerint |

#### INFINITIVES

*Pres.* posse *Past* potuisse

## 36. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

### INDICATIVE

#### PRESENT

| *Active* | | *Passive* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ferō | ferimus | feror | ferimur |
| fers | fertis | ferris, -re | feriminī |
| fert | ferunt | fertur | feruntur |

#### IMPERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ferēbam | ferēbāmus | ferēbar | ferēbāmur |

#### FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| feram | ferēmus | ferar | ferēmur |

#### PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tulī | tulimus | lātus sum | lātī sumus |

#### PAST PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tuleram | tulerāmus | lātus eram | lātī erāmus |

#### FUTURE PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tulerō | tulerimus | lātus erō | lātī erimus |

### IMPERATIVE

#### PRESENT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *2d pers.* | fer | ferte |

### INFINITIVES

| | *Active* | *Passive* |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | ferre | ferrī |
| *Past* | tulisse | lātus esse |
| *Fut.* | lātūrus esse | lātum īrī |

PARTICIPLES

| | *Active* | | *Passive* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | ferēns | *Past* | lātus |
| *Fut.* | lātūrus | | |

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

## 37. CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: **eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum**

INDICATIVE

| PRESENT | | PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| eō | īmus | iī | iimus |
| īs | ītis | īstī (iistī) | īstis (iistis) |
| it | eunt | iit | iērunt |

| IMPERFECT | | PAST PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ībam | ībāmus | ieram | ierāmus |
| ībās | ībātis | ierās | ierātis |
| ībat | ībant | ierat | ierant |

| FUTURE | | FUTURE PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ībō | ībimus | ierō | ierimus |
| ībis | ībitis | ieris | ieritis |
| ībit | ībunt | ierit | ierint |

*a*. Forms are sometimes found in the perfect system with the stem **īv-**, as **īvī, īveram,** etc.

IMPERATIVE

*Pres., 2d pers.* ī, īte,

INFINITIVES

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* | īre |
| *Past* | iisse *or* īsse |
| *Fut.* | itūrus esse |

PARTICIPLES

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* | iēns (*gen.* euntis) |
| *Fut.* | itūrus |

GERUND

eundī, etc.

## 38. CONJUGATION OF FĪŌ

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

| PRESENT | | PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| fīō | — | factus sum | factī sumus |
| fīs | — | factus es | factī estis |
| fit | fīunt | factus est | factī sunt |
| IMPERFECT | | PAST PERFECT | |
| fīēbam | fīēbamus | factus eram | factī erāmus |
| fīēbās | fīēbātis | factus erās | factī erātis |
| fīēbat | fīēbant | factus erat | factī erant |
| FUTURE | | FUTURE PERFECT | |
| fīam | fīēmus | factus erō | factī erimus |
| fīēs | fīētis | factus eris | factī eritis |
| fīet | fīent | factus erit | factī erunt |

IMPERATIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres., 2d pers.* | fī, | fīte |

INFINITIVES

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* | fierī |
| *Past* | factus esse |
| *Fut.* | factum īrī |

PARTICIPLE

*Perf.* factus

## 39. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ

**volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing*

### INDICATIVE

| PRESENT | | PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| volō | volumus | voluī | voluimus |
| vīs | vultis | voluistī | voluistis |
| vult | volunt | voluit | voluērunt |

| IMPERFECT | | PAST PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| volēbam | volēbāmus | volueram | voluerāmus |
| volēbās | volēbātis | voluerās | voluerātis |
| volēbat | volēbant | voluerat | voluerant |

| FUTURE | | FUTURE PERFECT | |
|---|---|---|---|
| volam | volēmus | voluerō | voluerimus |
| volēs | volētis | volueris | volueritis |
| volet | volent | voluerit | voluerint |

### INFINITIVES

*Pres.* velle
*Past* voluisse

### PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* volēns

## REVIEW OF SYNTAX

### AGREEMENT

**40.** (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

(3) A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains.

(4) A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

### CASES

#### THE NOMINATIVE

**41.** (1) The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate.

#### THE GENITIVE

**42.** (1) The genitive is the case of the possessor. (*Genitive of Possession.*)

(2) With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs. (*Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.*)

(3) The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Genitive of Description.*)

#### THE DATIVE

**43.** (1) The indirect object is put in the dative case. (*Dative of Indirect Object.*)

(2) The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near,* and some others. (*Dative with Adjectives.*)

(3) Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative. (*Dative with Special Verbs.*)

(4) Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub,** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative.

This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad, circum, com-, in, inter, post, prō,** and **super.** (*Dative with Compounds.*)

### THE ACCUSATIVE

**44.** (1) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case. (*Accusative as Direct Object.*)

(2) A noun which is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is put in the accusative. (*Accusative of Duration of Time.*)

(3) The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. (*Accusative of Extent of Space.*)

(4) Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (*Accusative with Prepositions.*)

### THE ABLATIVE

**45.** (1) Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent,* and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** (*Ablative of Separation.*)

(2) With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** (*Ablative of Agent.*)

(3) The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (*Ablative of Place.*)

(4) The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition. (*Ablative of Time.*)

(5) The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*)

(6) The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum,** is used to express manner. (*Ablative of Manner.*)

(7) A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. (*Ablative of Means.*)

(8) A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

(9) The measure or degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. (*Ablative of Degree of Difference.*)

(10) The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (*Ablative of Respect* or *Specification.*)

(11) The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Ablative of Description.*)

(12) The ablative is used to express cause. (*Ablative of Cause.*)

(13) **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative. (*Ablative with Certain Deponents.*)

### THE VOCATIVE

**46.** The vocative denotes the person addressed.

## MOODS

### THE INDICATIVE

**47.** The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply as answer a statement of fact.

### THE IMPERATIVE

**48.** The imperative is used to express commands.

### THE INFINITIVE

**49.** (1) The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb, by denoting an action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

(2) The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing,* and the like. (*Indirect Discourse.*)

### THE GERUND

**50.** The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number. The cases in which it is used are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**ā, ab,** *prep. with abl.*, by, from.
**abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go away.
**absēns,** *gen.* **absentis,** absent.
**absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus,** be away, be absent, be distant.
**ac,** *conj., see* **atque.**
**accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum,** kindle, set on fire.
**accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** accept, receive.
**accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum,** recline.
**ācer, ācris, ācre,** fierce, eager.
**acerbus, -a, -um,** bitter.
**Achaeī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, the Achaeans.
**ācriter,** *adv.*, vigorously.
**acuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** sharpen.
**ad,** *prep. with acc.*, to, toward.
**addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** bring.
**adeō,** *adv.*, to such an extent, so, so very.
**adhūc,** *adv.*, as yet, still.
**adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum,** help.
**adstō, -stāre, -stitī,** stand by, stand near, stand.
**adsum, adesse, adfuī,** be present, be at hand, be here.
**adūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum,** burn, scorch.
**advena, -ae,** M., stranger.
**adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come to, arrive at, approach.
**adventus, -ūs,** M., coming, arrival.
**adversus, -a, -um,** opposite, in front; adverse, unfavorable.
**advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus,** turn, turn towards.
**aedificium, -ī,** N., building.
**aeger, -gra, -grum,** ill, sick.
**aegra,** *see* **aeger.**
**aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** be sick.
**aestāte,** in summer.
**aetās, -tātis,** F., age.
**afferō** (*also spelled* **adferō**), **afferre, attulī, allātum,** bring to, bring.
**afficiō** (*also spelled* **adficiō**), **-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** treat.
**ager, agrī,** M., field, farm, land.
**agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** drive, disturb, move; wave, shake.
**agmen, agminis,** N., column, line, army, band.
**agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum,** recognize.
**agnus, -ī,** M., lamb.
**agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum,** do, drive.
**agricola, -ae,** M., farmer.
**aliēnus, -a, -um,** belonging to another, of another, strange, unfavorable.
**aliēnus, -ī,** M., stranger.
**aliquis, aliquid,** someone, something, anyone, anything.
**alius, alia, aliud,** another.
**allātus,** *participle of* **afferō.**
**alter, altera, alterum,** the other (of two), a second, another.
**altus, -a, -um,** high, tall.
**amāmus,** we love.
**amant,** (they) love.
**amās,** you love.
**amat,** (he, she, it) loves.
**amātor, -ōris,** M., lover.
**ambrosia, -ae,** F., ambrosia (*the food of the gods*).
**ambulant,** (they) walk.

**ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** walk.
**America, -ae,** F., America.
**amīcī,** friends.
**amīcus, -ī,** M., friend.
**amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** love.
**amoenus, -a, -um,** pleasant.
**Amphinomus, -ī,** M., Amphinomus, *one of Penelope's suitors.*
**amphora, -ae,** F., jar.
**amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum,** embrace; **sē amplectuntur,** they embrace each other.
**an,** *conj.*, or.
**ancilla, -ae,** F., maid-servant, maid.
**animal, animālis,** N., animal.
**animus, -ī,** M., mind, spirit.
**annōn,** *conj.*, or not.
**annuō, -ere, -uī,** nod, nod assent.
**annus, -ī,** M., year.
**ante,** *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of.
**anteā,** *adv.*, formerly, before.
**antehāc,** *adv.*, before this, heretofore.
**antequam,** *conj.*, before.
**Antinous, -ī,** M., Antinous, *one of Penelope's suitors.*
**antīquitus,** *adv.*, long ago.
**antrum, -ī,** N., cavern.
**apage,** *interjection*, off with you, begone!
**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum,** open.
**aperta,** *see* **apertus.**
**apertus, -a, -um,** open.
**appāreō, -ēre, -uī,** appear.
**appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** call, name.
**appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** approach.
**aptē,** *adv.*, deftly, accurately, cleverly.
**aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** adjust, fit.
**apud,** *prep. with acc.*, among; at the house of.
**aqua, -ae,** F., water.
**arbor, arboris,** F., tree.
**arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** summon.
**arcus, -ūs,** M., bow.
**ārdēns,** *gen.* **ārdentis,** burning.
**Argus, -ī,** M., Argus, *Ulysses' dog.*
**ariēs, arietis,** M., ram.
**arma, -ōrum,** N. *pl.*, weapons, arms.
**armātus, -a, -um,** armed.
**armilla, -ae,** F., bracelet.
**ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum,** ascend, climb.
**at,** *conj.*, but.
**atque (ac),** *conj.*, and, and also.
**ātrium, -ī,** N., hall, atrium (*main room of a house*).
**attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum,** turn towards; **animum attendere,** give attention.
**audācia, -ae,** F., boldness, insolence.
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum,** dare.
**audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** hear.
**aufer,** *imperative singular of* **auferō.**
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum,** carry off, carry away, take away.
**aureus, -a, -um,** golden, gold (*as adjective*).
**aut,** *conj.*, or.
**autem,** *conj.* (*never stands first*), but, however.
**auxilium, -ī,** N., assistance, help.
**avidus, -a, -um,** greedy.
**avis, avis,** F., bird.
**avunculus, -ī,** M., uncle.

B

**baculum, -ī,** N., wand, staff.
**bālātus, -ūs,** M., bleating.
**barbarī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, the barbarians.
**bellum, -ī,** N., war.

**bene**, *adv.*, well; **bene facere**, *with dative*, do a favor to, treat kindly.
**beneficium, -ī**, N., kindness.
**benigna**, *see* **benignus.**
**benignē**, *adv.*, kindly.
**benignus, -a, -um**, kind.
**bestia, -ae**, F., beast.
**bibō, -ere, bibī**, drink.
**bona**, *see* **bonus.**
**bonus, -a, -um**, good.
**bracchium, -ī**, N., arm, forearm.
**brevī**, *adv.*, in a short time.
**brevis, -e**, short.
**Britannia, -ae**, F., Great Britain.

C

**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus**, fall.
**caecus, -a, -um**, blind.
**caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum**, cut.
**calathus, -ī**, M., basket.
**calidus, -a, -um**, hot, warm.
**callidissimus, -a, -um**, shrewdest, wisest.
**callidus, -a, -um**, shrewd, clever, wise.
**canis, canis**, M., dog.
**cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, sing, crow.
**caper, caprī**, M., goat.
**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum**, take.
**captīvus, -ī**, M., prisoner.
**caput, capitis**, N., head.
**cāra**, *see* **cārus.**
**carō, carnis**, F., flesh, meat.
**cārus, -a, -um**, dear.
**casa, -ae**, F., cottage.
**cāseus, -ī**, M., cheese.
**castellum, -ī**, N., fort, redoubt.
**castra, -ōrum**, N. *pl.*, camp.
**causa, -ae**, F., cause; *abl.* **causā** *preceded by genitive*, for the sake (of), for the purpose (of).
**caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum**, be careful, take care, beware of.
**caverna, -ae**, F., cavern, cave.
**celeriter**, *adv.*, swiftly.
**cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, conceal.
**cēna, -ae**, F., dinner.
**cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, dine.
**cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um**, think.
**centum**, *numeral adj.*, one hundred.
**centuriō, -ōnis**, M., centurion.
**certāmen, -minis**, N., contest.
**certē**, *adv.*, certainly.
**certus, -a, -um**, certain; **prō certō**, as certain.
**cervus, -ī**, M., deer.
**cēterī, -ae, -a**, the other, the others.
**cibus, -ī**, M., food.
**Circē, Circae**, F., Circe, *an enchantress.*
**circulus, -ī**, M., circle.
**circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around.
**circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum**, put around.
**circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, look around.
**circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum**, surround.
**cīvis, cīvis**, M., citizen.
**clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, shout, cry out.
**clāmor, -ōris**, M., shout, cry.
**clāra**, *see* **clārus.**
**clārus, -a, -um**, clear, bright, famous.
**claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum**, close.
**clausus, -a, -um**, closed.
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum**, began.
**cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, consider, think.
**cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum**, know, recognize.

**colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** tie together.
**collis, collis,** M., hill.
**columna, -ae,** F., column, pillar.
**comedō, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsum,** eat up.
**comes, comitis,** M., companion.
**committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** entrust.
**compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill.
**condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** found, establish.
**confricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** rub together.
**conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,** throw.
**cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** try, attempt.
**cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** consecrate.
**cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum,** sit down.
**cōnsilium, -ī,** N., plan, advice.
**cōnspectus, -ūs,** M., sight.
**cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,** observe, see.
**cōnsul, cōnsulis,** M., consul.
**contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum,** turn, twist.
**contrā,** *prep. with acc.*, against.
**contrōversia, -ae,** F., controversy.
**contumēlia, -ae,** F., disrespect.
**conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** assemble, come together.
**convīvium, -ī,** N., banquet.
**cōpia, -ae,** F., plenty; *plural*, **cōpiae, -ārum,** troops, forces.
**coquus, -ī,** M., cook.
**Cornēlia, -ae,** F., Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*).
**cornū, -ūs,** N., horn; flank (*of an army*).
**corpus, corporis,** N., body.
**crās,** *adv.*, tomorrow.
**crātēra, -ae,** F., bowl.
**crēdibilis, -e,** credible.
**crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** believe, trust.
**crūs, crūris,** N., leg.
**cubiculum, -ī,** N., bedroom.
**cuiquam,** *dative of* **quisquam.**
**culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** blame.
**cum,** *prep. with abl.*, with.
**cum,** *conj.*, when.
**cumulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** pile up.
**cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** wish.
**cupit,** wishes.
**cūr,** *adv.*, why.
**cūra, -ae,** F., care, anxiety.
**cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** care for, take care of.
**currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum,** run.
**cursus, -ūs,** M., course.
**custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** guard.
**Cyclōps, Cyclōpis,** M., a Cyclops.

## D

**dant,** (they) give.
**dat,** (he, she, it) gives.
**dē,** *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; regarding, concerning, about.
**dea, -ae,** F., goddess.
**dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** owe.
**dēbilis, -e,** weak.
**dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum,** defend.
**dēfessus, -a, -um,** tired out, tired.
**deinde,** *adv.*, next, then.
**dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** delight.
**dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum,** destroy, blot out.
**dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** deliberate.

**dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** choose, select.
**dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** let down, lower, drop.
**dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum,** take down.
**dēnique,** *adv.*, finally.
**dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** put down, put aside.
**dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** come down, descend.
**dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,** desert, abandon.
**dēsertus, -a, -um,** deserted.
**dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** desire, long for, miss.
**dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum,** jump down.
**dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm,** cease.
**dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** despair.
**dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** detain.
**deus, deī,** M., a god; *pl.* **dī,** the gods.
**dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** devour.
**dextra, -ae,** F., right hand, right (*as opposed to left*).
**dī,** *plural of* **deus.**
**dīc,** *imperative singular of* **dīcō.**
**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum,** say.
**diēs, diēī,** M., F., day.
**difficulter,** *adv.*, with difficulty; **haud difficulter,** with no difficulty.
**dīs,** *dative and ablative pl. of* **deus.**
**discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** go away, depart.
**discimus,** we learn.
**discit,** (he, she, it) learns.
**discō, -ere, didicī,** learn
**dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** arrange, station.
**dissimulātus, -a, -um,** concealed, disguised.
**dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** conceal.
**diū,** *adv.*, long, for a long time.
**dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum,** divide.
**dō, dare, dedī, datum,** give.
**doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus,** suffer.
**dolus, -ī,** M., trick.
**domī,** at home.
**domina, -ae,** F., mistress, madam.
**dominus, -ī,** M., master.
**domus, -ūs,** F., home, house; **domum,** *acc.*, home (*as place to which*), homeward; **domī,** at home.
**dōnec,** *conj.*, until.
**dōnum, -ī,** N., gift.
**dormiō, -īre, -īvī -ītum,** sleep.
**dubium, -ī,** N., doubt.
**dubius, -a, -um,** doubtful; **haud dubius,** unmistakable.
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum,** lead.
**dūdum,** *see* jam **dūdum.**
**dulcis, -e,** sweet, delicious.
**dulcissimus, -a, -um,** sweetest, very delicious.
**dum,** *conj.*, while.
**duo, duae, duo,** two.
**duodecim,** *indeclinable numeral*, twelve.
**dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** hold out, endure.
**dūrus, -a, -um,** hard.
**dux, ducis,** M., leader.

## E

**ē, ex,** *prep. with abl.*, from.
**ecce,** *interjection*, behold, see!
**edepol,** *interjection*, by heavens!
**edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum,** eat.
**edunt,** (they) eat.

**efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum,** carry out.
**efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** render, make.
**effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī,** escape.
**effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus,** pour out; **sanguinem effundere,** shed blood.
**ego,** I.
**ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** come out.
**ēheu,** *interjection,* alas, oh!
**eia,** *interjection,* ah!
**ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum,** choose, select.
**ēn,** *interjection,* ah!
**enim,** *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), for.
**eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum,** go
**epistula, -ae,** F., letter.
**equidem,** *adv.,* indeed, for my part.
**equus, -ī,** M., horse.
**ergō,** *adv.,* therefore.
**ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctum,** lift up.
**errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** wander.
**error, -ōris,** M., wandering.
**est,** is.
**este** (*imperative pl. of* **sum**), be.
**ēsuriō, -īre,** be hungry.
**et,** *conj.,* and.
**etiam,** *adv.,* also, even.
**Etrūscī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.,* the Etruscans.
**euge,** *interjection,* good, hurrah!
**Eumaeus, -ī,** M., Eumaeus, *a servant of Ulysses.*
**Eurōpa, -ae,** F., Europe.
**Eurylochus, -ī,** Eurylochus, *one of Penelope's suitors.*
**excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** depart.
**excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** receive.
**excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** arouse, stir up, rouse.
**exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** cry out, call out.
**exemplar, exemplāris,** N.,- copy, specimen.
**exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go out.
**exercitus, -ūs,** M., army.
**expectat,** (he, she, it) expects, awaits.
**expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** expect, await, wait for.
**expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus,** drive out.
**explōrātor, -ōris,** M., scout.
**expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** take by storm, capture.
**extinguō, -tinguere, -tinxī, -tinctum,** put out, extinguish.
**extrā,** *prep. with acc.,* outside, outside of; *as adv.,* outside.
**exul, exulis,** M., exile.

F

**fābula, -ae,** F., story; play.
**fac,** *imperative singular of* **faciō.**
**facile,** *adv.,* easily.
**facilis, -e,** easy
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum,** make, do.
**facit,** (he, she, it) makes, does.
**fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum,** deceive.
**fāma, -ae,** F., reputation.
**famēs, famis,** F., hunger.
**fās,** *indeclinable,* N., Heaven's will; *translated as adjective,* right.
**faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum,** favor (*takes dative*).
**fēlīx,** *gen.* **fēlīcis,** happy, fortunate.
**fēmina, -ae,** F., woman.
**fenestra, -ae,** F., window.

**fera, -ae,** F., wild animal.
**ferē,** *adv.*, almost, about.
**feriō, -īre,** strike.
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** bring, carry.
**fert,** *third person singular of* **ferō.**
**ferula, -ae,** F., ferule, ruler.
**ferus, -a, -um,** fierce.
**festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** hasten, hurry.
**fidēlis, -e,** faithful.
**figūra, -ae,** F., figure.
**fīlia, -ae,** F., daughter.
**fīlius, -ī,** M., son.
**finis, fīnis,** M., end, limit; *pl.*, country.
**fīō, fierī, factus sum,** become, be made (*used as passive of* **faciō**).
**flamma, -ae,** F., flame.
**flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum,** bend.
**flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum,** blow.
**flōs, flōris,** M., flower.
**flūmen, flūminis,** N., river.
**fluō, -ere, flūxī,** flow.
**foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** dishonor, disgrace.
**fōrma, -ae,** F., form.
**fortasse,** *adv.*, perhaps.
**forte,** *adv.*, perhaps, by chance.
**fortis, -e,** brave.
**fortiter,** *adv.*, bravely.
**fortūna, -ae,** F., fortune.
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, break down.
**frāter, frātris,** M., brother.
**frīgidus, -a, -um,** cold.
**frōns, frontis,** F., forehead, brow.
**frūctus, -ūs,** M., fruit, products.
**frūmentum, -ī,** N., grain.
**frūstrā,** *adv.*, in vain.
**fuga, -ae,** F., flight.
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus,** flee.
**fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** drive away, drive, put to flight.
**fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī,** shine.
**fūmus, -ī,** M., smoke, odor.
**fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum,** pour; **lacrimās fundere,** shed tears.
**fūnis, fūnis,** M., rope.
**furibundus, -a, -um,** frantic, mad; *sometimes translated as adverb*, madly.

G

**galea, -ae,** F., helmet.
**Gallia, -ae,** F., Gaul (*a country*).
**gallus, -ī,** M., rooster.
**Gallus, -ī,** M., a Gaul (*an inhabitant of* **Gallia**).
**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,** be glad, rejoice.
**gaudium, -ī,** N., joy.
**geminī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, twins.
**generōsus, -a, -um,** noble-minded.
**gēns, gentis,** F., nation.
**Germānus, -a, -um,** German.
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum,** bear, carry, wear; carry on, wage.
**gladius, -ī,** M., sword.
**glāns, glandis,** F., acorn.
**Graecus, -ī,** M., a Greek.
**grāmen, grāminis,** N., grass.
**grandis, -e,** large.
**grāta,** *see* **grātus.**
**grātia, -ae,** F., favor; **grātiās agere,** thank.
**grātus, -a, -um,** pleasing, welcome, grateful.
**gravis, -e,** heavy.
**graviter,** *adv.*, heavily.
**grex, gregis,** M., flock, herd.
**gubernāculum, -ī,** N., helm, rudder.
**gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** taste.

H

**habent,** (they) have.
**habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** have.

**habet,** (he, she, it) has.
**habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** live, dwell.
**habitus, -ūs,** M., appearance.
**haedus, -ī,** M., kid.
**hasta, -ae,** F., spear.
**haud,** *adv.*, not; **haud procul,** not far away.
**hei,** *interjection,* ah, woe! **hei mihi,** oh!
**hem,** *interjection,* ha! well!
**hercle,** *interjection,* by heavens! good heavens!
**herī,** *adv.*, yesterday.
**heu,** *interjection,* alas!
**heus,** *interjection,* here! hello!
**Hibernia, -ae,** F., Ireland.
**hic, haec, hoc,** this.
**hīc,** *adv.*, here.
**hieme,** in the winter.
**hinc,** *adv.*, from here.
**Hispānia, -ae,** F., Spain.
**hodiē,** *adv.*, today.
**homō, hominis,** M., man.
**honestus, -a, -um,** honorable.
**honor, -ōris,** M., honor.
**hōra, -ae,** F., hour.
**Horātius, -ī,** M., Horatius (*a Roman name*); **Horātius Coclēs,** *name of a Roman hero.*
**horribilis, -e,** horrible.
**hortus, -ī,** M., garden.
**hospes, hospitis,** M., guest.
**hostis, hostis,** M., enemy.
**hūc,** *adv.*, to this place, hither, here.
**humī,** on the ground.

I

**ibi,** *adv.*, there.
**īdem, eadem, idem,** same, the same.
**idōneus, -a, -um,** suitable.
**igitur,** *adv.*, therefore.
**ignāvus, -a, -um,** cowardly; *masculine form as noun,* coward.
**ignis, ignis,** M., fire.
**ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum,** pardon (*takes dative*).
**ignōtus, -a, -um,** unknown.
**ille, illa, illud,** that.
**illūc,** *adv.*, to that place, there.
**imāgō, imāginis,** F., image, likeness.
**imbecillus, -a, -um,** helpless.
**immō,** *adv.*, on the other hand; **immō vērō,** rather, much more likely.
**immortālis, -e,** immortal.
**imperātor, -ōris,** M., general, commander.
**imperātum, -ī,** N., command.
**imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** command.
**impetus, -ūs,** M., attack.
**impiger, -gra, -grum,** energetic, industrious.
**impotēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** weak.
**improbus, -a, -um,** wicked, bad.
**impudēns, -entis,** impudent.
**impūne,** *adv.*, with impunity, without punishment.
**in,** *prep.* (1) *with abl.*, in, on; (2) *with acc.*, into.
**incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** begin.
**incola, -ae,** M., F., inhabitant.
**incolumis, -e,** safe.
**inde,** *adv.*, from there.
**indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** point out.
**ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** enter, enter upon; form.
**īnfāns, īnfantis,** M., F., infant.
**īnfestus, -a, -um,** hateful, hostile.
**īnfīdissimus, -a, -um,** most faithless.
**īnfirmus, -a, -um,** weak.
**ingēns,** *gen.* **ingentis,** huge.

**ingrātus, -a, -um,** ungrateful.
**inimīcus, -ī,** M., enemy.
**injūria, -ae,** F., injury, injustice.
**īnsigne, īnsignis,** N., decoration, badge.
**īnsula, -ae,** F., island.
**intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** understand, know.
**intendō, -dere, -dī, -tum,** aim.
**inter,** *prep. with acc.*, between, among.
**interdum,** *adv.*, sometimes.
**intereā,** *adv.*, meanwhile.
**interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** kill.
**interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** ask.
**intimus, -a, -um,** innermost, innermost part of, interior of.
**intrā,** *prep. with acc.*, within.
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** enter.
**inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** find.
**invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** invite.
**invītus, -a, -um,** unwilling, unwillingly.
**invocātus, -a, -um,** uninvited.
**iō,** *interjection,* hurrah! **iō triumphe,** hurrah, triumph!
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** self.
**īrātus, -a, -um,** angry.
**irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum,** laugh at.
**is, ea, id,** this, that; he, she, it.
**iste, ista, istud,** this, that; *often indicating contempt,* that fellow.
**ita,** *adv.*, so, thus; yes.
**Italia, -ae,** F., Italy.
**itaque,** *conj* , and so, therefore.
**iter, itineris,** N., road, journey, march.
**iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** repeat.
**iterum,** *adv.*, again.

## J

**jaceō, -ēre, -uī,** lie.
**jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum,** throw.
**jaculātor, -ōris,** M., javelin thrower.
**jaculum, -ī,** N., javelin.
**jam,** *adv.*, now, already; **nōn jam,** no longer; **jam jam,** even now, very soon.
**jam dūdum,** *adv.*, now for a long time, for some time.
**Jāniculum, -ī,** N., the Janiculum, *a hill across the Tiber from the Palatine.*
**jānua, -ae,** F., door.
**jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum,** order, command.
**jūcundus, -a, -um,** pleasant, delightful.
**jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum,** join.
**Juppiter, Jovis,** M., Jupiter.
**jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** swear.
**juvenis, juvenis,** M., young man.
**juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum,** help, assist.

## L

**labor, labōris,** M., labor, task.
**labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** work.
**labrum, -ī,** N., lip.
**lāc, lactis,** N., milk.
**lacertus, -ī,** M., arm, upper arm.
**lacrima, -ae,** F., tear.
**lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** weep.
**laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum,** harm, injure.
**laeta,** *see* **laetus.**
**laetus, -a, -um,** happy, glad.
**lapis, lapidis,** M., stone.
**lateō, -ēre, -uī,** lurk, be concealed.
**Latīna,** *see* **Latīnus.**
**Latīnus, -a, -um,** Latin.
**lātus, -a, -um,** wide, broad.
**laudāmus,** we praise.
**laudant,** (they) praise.

**laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** praise.
**lectulus, -ī,** M., couch, bed.
**legiō, -ōnis,** F., legion.
**legit,** (he, she) reads.
**lentē,** *adv.*, slowly.
**lētum, -ī,** N., death.
**libenter,** *adv.*, gladly, willingly.
**liber, librī,** M., book.
**lībum, -ī,** N., cake.
**licet, licēre, licuit,** *impersonal verb*, it is permitted.
**lignum, -ī,** N., wood.
**ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** tie.
**līlium, -ī,** N., lily.
**lingua, -ae,** F., tongue, language.
**lītus, lītoris,** N., shore.
**loculī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, book-satchel.
**locus, -ī,** M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** N.), place.
**longa,** *see* **longus.**
**longē,** *adv.*, at a distance, by far.
**longus, -a, -um,** long.
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum,** speak, talk.
**Lūcius, -ī,** M., Lucius (*name of a boy or man*).
**lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum,** play.
**lūdus, -ī,** M., play; school.
**lūna, -ae,** F., moon.
**lūx, lūcis,** F., light; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak.

## M

**macer, -cra, -crum,** lean, thin.
**maga, -ae,** F., enchantress.
**magis,** *adv.*, more.
**magna,** *see* **magnus.**
**magnanimus, -a, -um,** generous-spirited, noble.
**magnus, -a, -um,** large.
**male,** *adv.*, badly.
**malus, -a, -um,** bad.
**mālus, -ī,** M., mast.
**Mamilius, -ī,** M., Mamilius, *a king of Tusculum.*
**māne,** in the morning.
**maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum,** remain.
**manet,** (he, she, it) remains.
**manus, -ūs,** F., hand.
**Mārcus, -ī,** M., Marcus (*name of a man or boy*).
**mare, maris,** N., sea.
**marītus, -ī,** M., husband.
**māter, mātris,** F., mother.
**mātrimōnium, -ī,** N., marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.
**maximus, -a, -um,** greatest.
**mē** (*accusative or ablative case*), me.
**mea,** *see* **meus.**
**mēcum,** with me (*see Section* **351**, *c*).
**medicāmentum, -ī,** N., medicine.
**medicus, -ī,** M., doctor, physician.
**medius, -a, -um,** middle, the middle of, in the middle.
**melius,** *neuter comparative of* **bonus.**
**membrum, -ī,** N., limb.
**mementō,** *pl.* **mementōte,** *imperative of* **meminī,** remember.
**meminī, meminisse,** remember (*perfect tense with present meaning*).
**memor,** *gen.* **memoris,** mindful.
**memoria, -ae,** F., memory.
**mendīcus, -a, -um,** beggarly, needy; *masculine as noun,* beggar; **senex mendīcus,** old beggar.
**Menelāus, -ī,** M., Menelaus, *a Greek hero.*
**mēns, mentis,** F., mind.
**Mercurius, -ī,** M., Mercury.
**mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum,** dip.
**meridiē,** at noon.
**meritus, -a, -um,** deserved.
**metuō, -ere, -uī,** fear.

**meus, -a, -um,** my.
**mihi,** to me, me (*as indirect object*).
**mīles, mīlitis,** M., soldier.
**Minerva, -ae,** F., Minerva, *a goddess.*
**minimē,** *adv.*, least, not at all, by no means, no.
**minister, -trī,** M., attendant.
**minus,** *adv.*, less; **sīn minus,** if not.
**mīrificus, -a, -um,** wonderful.
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** wonder at.
**mīrus, -a, -um,** strange, remarkable.
**misellus, -a, -um,** unfortunate, poor.
**miser, misera, miserum,** unhappy.
**miserē,** *adv.* (*superlative* **miserrimē**), miserably, wretchedly.
**misericordia, -ae,** F., pity.
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum,** send.
**modo,** *adv.*, only; **modo . . . modo,** now . . . now.
**modus, -ī,** M., manner.
**moenia, -ium,** N. *pl.*, walls.
**molestus, -a, -um,** troublesome, annoying.
**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** warn.
**mōns, montis,** M., mountain.
**mōnstrat,** (he, she) points out.
**mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** point out, show, display.
**mōnstrum, -ī,** N., monster.
**mora, -ae,** F., delay.
**morbus, -ī,** M., illness, disease.
**morior, morī, mortuus sum,** die.
**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** delay.
**mors, mortis,** F., death.
**mortuus, -a, -um,** dead.
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum,** move.
**mox,** *adv.*, soon.
**mulgeō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsum,** milk.
**multa,** *see* **multus.**
**multī,** many.
**multum,** *adv.*, much.
**multus, -a, -um,** much; *pl.*, many.
**mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** fortify.
**murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** murmur, complain, grumble.
**mūrus, -ī,** M., wall.
**mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** change.

## N

**nam,** *conj.*, for.
**nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** tell, relate, tell a story.
**natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** swim.
**nātus, -a, -um,** born; **duodecim annōs nātus,** twelve years old.
**Naupactōus, -ī,** M., Naupactous, *a companion of Ulysses.*
**nauta, -ae,** M., sailor.
**nāvis, nāvis,** F., ship, boat.
**-ne,** *an enclitic denoting a question* (*see Section* **382**).
**nē . . . quidem,** not even.
**necesse,** *indeclinable adj.*, necessary.
**necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** kill.
**nectar, nectaris,** N., nectar (*the drink of the gods*).
**nefās,** *indeclinable,* N., a sin, a crime; *translated as adjective*, wrong, wicked.
**neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum,** neglect, disregard.
**nēmō,** *dative* **nēminī,** no one (*genitive supplied from* **nūllus**).
**Neptūnus, -ī,** M., Neptune.
**nēquāquam,** *adv.*, by no means.
**neque,** *conj.*, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
**nervus, -ī,** M., bow-string.
**nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,** not know.
**nihil,** *indeclinable,* N., nothing.
**nīl,** *same as* **nihil.**
**nimis,** *adv.*, too, too much.

**nisi,** *conj.*, unless, except, if not.
**nōbilis, -e,** noble; M. *pl. as noun,* the nobles.
**noctū,** *adv.*, at night.
**nōlī,** *pl.* **nōlīte,** be unwilling, do not (*imperative of* **nōlō**).
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** be unwilling, not wish.
**nōmen, nōminis,** N., name.
**nōn,** *adv.*, not.
**nōndum,** *adv.*, not yet.
**nōnne,** *a word used to introduce a question* (*see Section* **382**).
**nōnnūllus, -a, -um,** some; *pl.*, some, several.
**nōs** (*nominative and accusative*), we, us.
**noster, -tra, -trum,** our.
**nostra,** *see* **noster.**
**nōtus, -a, -um,** known, well known.
**nōvī, nōvisse,** know (*perfect of* **nōscō,** learn).
**novissimus, -a, -um** (*superlative of* **novus**), last.
**novus, -a, -um,** new; **quid novī,** what news?
**nox, noctis,** F., night.
**nūbēs, nūbis,** F., cloud.
**nūbilō, -āre,** be cloudy, cloud up.
**nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum,** marry.
**nūgae, -ārum,** F. *pl.*, jests, nonsense; **nūgās aufer,** enough of this nonsense.
**nūllus, -a, -um,** no, none.
**num,** *a word used to introduce a question* (*see Section* **382**).
**numerus, -ī,** M., number.
**numquam,** *adv.*, never.
**nunc,** *adv.*, now.
**nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** announce.
**nūntius, -ī,** M., messenger.
**nūper,** *adv.*, recently, a little while ago.

O

**obscūra,** *see* **obscūrus.**
**obscūrus, -a, -um,** dim, dark.
**occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** kill.
**occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** seize.
**Octāvia, -ae,** F., Octavia (*name of a woman or girl*).
**oculus, -ī,** M., eye.
**ōdī, ōdisse,** hate (*perfect tense with present meaning*).
**odiōsus, -a, -um,** hateful.
**offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum,** offer.
**officium, -ī,** N., duty.
**ohē,** *interjection,* hello, hello there, oh, oho!
**olfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,** smell.
**ōlim,** *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.
**omnis, -e,** all.
**oportet, -ēre, -uit,** *impersonal verb,* it is proper, one ought.
**(ops), opis,** F., power; *pl.* resources.
**oppidum, -ī,** N., town.
**opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum,** overcome, overpower.
**oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** attack.
**optimus, -a, -um,** best.
**Orbilius, -ī,** M., Orbilius (*a Roman name*).
**ōrdō, ōrdinis,** M., line, rank, order.
**ostendō, -dere, -dī, -tum,** show, display.
**ostendit,** (he, she, it) shows.
**ovīle, ovīlis,** N., sheep-pen.
**ovis, ovis,** F., sheep.

P

**paene,** *adv.*, almost.
**Palātium, -ī,** N., the Palatine Hill.

**palma, -ae,** F., palm, hand.
**pānis, pānis,** M., bread.
**pannōsus, -a, -um,** ragged.
**pannus, -ī,** M., a cloth.
**parātus, -a, -um,** prepared.
**pāreō, -ēre, -uī,** obey.
**pariter,** *adv.*, equally.
**parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** prepare.
**pars, partis,** F., part.
**parum,** *adv. and indeclinable noun,* too little, little.
**parva,** *see* **parvus.**
**parvulus, -a, -um,** little.
**parvus, -a, -um,** small, little.
**pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum,** pasture.
**pāstor, -ōris,** M., shepherd.
**pater, patris,** M., father.
**patera, -ae,** F., a flat dish *or* bowl, a platter.
**patiēns,** *gen.* **patientis,** long enduring, suffering.
**patior, patī, passus sum,** endure.
**patria, -ae,** F., native country.
**patrius, -a, -um,** of one's father; of one's native country.
**paucī, -ae, -a,** few, a few.
**pavidus, -a, -um,** trembling, alarmed, terrified.
**pāx, pācis,** F., peace.
**pecūnia, -ae,** F., money.
**pecus, pecoris,** N., flock.
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum,** drive.
**pendeō, -ēre, pependī,** hang.
**Pēnelopē, -ae,** F., Penelope, *the wife of Ulysses.*
**pēnsum, -ī,** N., task, lesson.
**per,** *prep. with acc.*, through, all along.
**perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** destroy; lose.
**pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus,** perish.
**perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** accomplish, complete.
**perfidus, -a, -um,** treacherous.
**perīculōsa,** *see* **perīculōsus.**
**perīculōsus, -a, -um,** dangerous.
**perīculum, -ī,** N., danger.
**perītē,** *adv.*, skilfully.
**perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** arrive.
**pēs, pedis,** M., foot.
**pessimus, -a, -um,** worst.
**petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** seek, ask for; attack.
**pictūra, -ae,** F., picture.
**placeō, -ēre, -uī,** please.
**plāga, -ae,** F., blow.
**plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum,** clap.
**plēnus, -a, -um,** full.
**pōculum, -ī,** N., cup.
**poena, -ae,** F., punishment; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty, be punished.
**poēta, -ae,** M., poet.
**Polyphēmus, -ī,** M., Polyphemus, *a Cyclops.*
**pōmum, -ī,** N., apple.
**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,** place.
**pōns, pontis,** M., bridge.
**populus, -ī,** M., a people.
**porcus, -ī,** M., pig, pork.
**Porsenna, -ae,** M., Porsenna, *king of the Etruscans.*
**porta, -ae,** F., gate.
**portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** carry.
**possum, posse, potuī,** be able.
**post,** *prep. with acc.*, behind, after.
**postquam,** *conj.*, after.
**postrēmus, -a, -um,** last.
**postrīdiē,** *adv.*, on the next day.
**postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** demand.
**potēns,** *gen.* **potentis,** powerful.
**potentia, -ae,** F., power.
**praeda, -ae,** F., booty.

**praeditus, -a, -um,** endowed with, provided with.
**praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** put in charge of, put in command of.
**praemium, -ī,** N., reward.
**praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum,** furnish.
**praeter,** *prep. with acc.*, past; beyond, more than; except.
**precor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** pray, beg, beg for.
**prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum,** seize, take hold of.
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressum,** press, press hard.
**prīdem,** *adv.*, long ago.
**prīmum,** *adv.*, first; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.
**prīmus, -a, -um,** first.
**prīnceps, -cipis,** M., chief, prince.
**prior, prius,** first, foremost.
**prō,** *prep. with abl.*, for, in return for, on behalf of; before, in front of.
**probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** approve.
**prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** proceed, advance.
**procul,** *adv.*, at a distance, far.
**procus, -ī,** M., suitor.
**prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** come forward, come forth.
**proelium, -ī,** N., battle.
**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** forbid, prevent.
**prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** promise.
**prope,** *prep. with acc.*, near.
**properant,** (they) hasten.
**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** hurry, hasten.
**proprius, -a, -um,** one's own, own.
**propter,** *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
**prōspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** look forth, look, look toward.
**prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum,** protect.
**Proxenus, -ī,** M., Proxenus, *a companion of Ulysses.*
**prūdēns,** *gen.* **prūdentis,** prudent, far-seeing.
**Pūblius, -ī,** M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*).
**puella, -ae,** F., girl.
**puer, puerī,** M., boy.
**pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** fight.
**pugnus, -ī,** M., fist.
**pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** beautiful.
**pulchra,** *see* **pulcher.**
**pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** knock, knock upon.
**Pulvillus, -ī,** M., Pulvillus, *a Roman consul.*
**pūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum,** punish.
**putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** think.

## Q

**quālis, -e,** what sort, what kind.
**quam,** *adv.*, how, as, than; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.
**quamquam,** *conj.*, although.
**quandō,** *adv.*, when?
**quantus, -a, -um,** how large, how great; **quantum** (*as noun*), how much; (*as adverb*), how greatly, how.
**quārē,** *adv.*, why.
**quārtus, -a, -um,** fourth.
**quatiō, -ere, --, quassum,** shake.
**quattuor,** *numeral adj.*, four.
**-que,** *conj.*, and.
**quendam,** *see* **quīdam.**
**quī, quae, quod,** *rel. pron.* who, which, that; *interrog. adj.*, what?

**quia,** *conj.*, because.
**quid,** what?
**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (*see Section* **390**), a certain, someone, some.
**quidem,** *adv.* (*never stands first in its clause*), indeed; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.
**quīnquāgintā,** *numeral adj.*, fifty.
**quīnque,** *numeral adj.*, five.
**Quīntus, -ī,** M., Quintus (*name of a man or boy*).
**quīntus, -a, -um,** fifth.
**quis,** who?
**quisquam, quicquam,** *gen.* **cujusquam,** any one, any thing.
**quisquis, quicquid,** whoever, whatever.
**quō,** *adv.*, to what place, where.
**quod,** *conj.*, because.
**quō modō (quōmodo),** *adv.*, how?
**quoque,** *conj.*, also.
**quot,** *indeclinable adj.*, how many.
**quotus, -a, -um,** which in number, what; **quota hōra,** what hour.

R

**rāmus, -ī,** M., branch, bough.
**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum,** seize.
**recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** take back; **sē recipere,** withdraw, go back.
**rēctā,** *adv.*, directly.
**rēctē,** *adv.*, rightly.
**recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** refuse.
**reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** give back, render.
**redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** return.
**reditus, -ūs,** M., return.
**redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** bring back.
**referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum,** bring back, bring.
**rēgīna, -ae,** F., queen.
**rēgnum, -ī,** N., kingdom.
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum,** rule, direct.
**rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,** throw back, throw away.
**relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum,** leave.
**remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** reward.
**Remus, -ī,** M., Remus, *the brother of Romulus.*
**rēmus, -ī,** M., oar.
**renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** renew.
**repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum,** drive back, repel.
**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum,** find.
**resistō, -sistere, -stitī,** rĕsĭst.
**respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum,** answer, reply.
**restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** restore.
**retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** restrain.
**retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum,** draw back.
**rettulī,** *perfect of* **referō.**
**revēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** reveal.
**reveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** return, come back.
**rēx, rēgis,** M., king.
**Rhodius, -ī,** M., Rhodius, *one of the companions of Ulysses.*
**rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum,** laugh.
**rīdiculus, -a, -um,** absurd, ridiculous.
**rīpa, -ae,** F., bank (*of a stream*).
**rīsus, -ūs,** M., laughter, laugh.
**rīvus, -ī,** M., stream.
**rōbustus, -a, -um,** strong.
**rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** ask.
**Rōma, -ae,** F., Rome.
**Rōmānus, -a, -um,** Roman.

**Rōmānus, -ī,** M., a Roman; **Rōmānī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.*, the Romans.
**Rōmulus, -ī,** M., Romulus, *the founder of Rome.*
**rosa, -ae,** F., rose.
**rōstrum, -ī,** N., prow.
**rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum,** break through, break down, break.
**rūrsus,** *adv.*, again.

S

**saepe,** *adv.*, often.
**sagāx,** *gen.* **sagācis,** shrewd, sagacious.
**sagitta, -ae,** F., arrow.
**sagittārius, -ī,** M., archer.
**saltem,** *adv.*, at least.
**saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** dance.
**salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** greet.
**salvē,** *pl.* **salvēte,** hail, welcome (*imperative of* **salveō**).
**salvus, -a, -um,** safe.
**sānē,** *adv.*, of course.
**sanguis, sanguinis,** M., blood.
**sapiēns,** *gen.* **sapientis,** wise.
**satis,** *adv.*, enough.
**saxum, -ī,** N., rock.
**scaena, -ae,** F., scene.
**scelerātus, -a, -um,** wicked; *masculine as noun,* wretch, scoundrel.
**schola, -ae,** F., school.
**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum,** know.
**scrībit,** (he, she, it) writes.
**scūtum, -ī,** N., shield.
**secundus, -a, -um,** second.
**secūris, -is,** F., ax.
**sed,** *conj.*, but.
**sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum,** sit, be seated.
**semper,** *adv.*, always.
**senātor, -ōris,** M., senator.
**senātus, -ūs,** M., the senate.
**senectūs, -tūtis,** F., old age.
**senex, senis,** M., old man.
**sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum,** feel, notice, think, know.
**sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultus,** bury.
**septem,** *numeral adj.*, seven.
**sepultus, -a, -um** (*participle of* **sepeliō**), overcome.
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,** follow.
**sērō,** *adv.*, late, too late.
**servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** save, preserve.
**servus, -ī,** M., slave, servant.
**Sextus, -ī,** M., Sextus (*name of a man or boy*).
**sī,** *conj.*, if; **sī quis,** if anyone.
**sīc,** *adv.*, thus, in this way.
**siccus, -a, -um,** dry.
**signifer, signiferī,** M., standard-bearer.
**signum, -ī,** N., sign, mark, standard.
**silentium, -ī,** N., silence.
**sileō, -ēre, -uī,** be silent.
**silva, -ae,** F., forest.
**similis, -e,** like, similar.
**simulātus, -a, -um,** pretended, fictitious.
**simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** pretend.
**sīn,** *conj.*, but if; **sīn minus,** if not.
**sine,** *prep. with abl.*, without.
**singulī, -ae, -a,** one by one.
**sinistra, -ae,** F., left hand, left.
**sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** permit, allow.
**sitiō, -īre, -īvī,** thirst, be thirsty.
**socius, -ī,** M., ally.
**sōl, sōlis,** M., sun.
**soleō, -ēre, solitus sum,** be accustomed.
**sōlum,** *adv.*, only; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also.
**sōlus, -a, -um,** alone, only.
**somnus, -ī,** M., sleep.

**sonitus, -ī,** M., sound.
**sonōrus, -a, -um,** resonant, sonorous.
**sonus, -ī,** M., sound.
**soror, sorōris,** F., sister.
**sors, sortis,** F., lot.
**Sparta, -ae,** F., Sparta, *city of Greece.*
**spatium, -ī,** N., space.
**speciēs, speciēī,** F., appearance.
**spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** watch, look at, look.
**splendidus, -a, -um,** splendid.
**spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** plunder.
**Spurius, -ī,** M., Spurius, *(a Roman name);* Spurius Lartius, *a Roman senator.*
**squalidus, -a, -um,** squalid, dirty, neglected.
**statim,** *adv.*, at once.
**stella, -ae,** F., star.
**stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus,** stand.
**stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum,** strip, draw.
**stultus, -a, -um,** foolish, stupid; *masculine as noun,* fool.
**sub,** *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under.
**subitō,** *adv.*, suddenly.
**sublicius, -a, -um,** resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge.
**succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** succeed, take the place of.
**suī,** of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
**suibus,** *dative and ablative plural of* **sūs.**
**sum, esse, fuī,** be.
**summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** remove.
**summus, -a, -um,** highest, highest part of, top of.
**sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,** take, take up, assume.
**sunt,** (they) are.
**superbus, -a, -um,** haughty, proud.
**superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** defeat, overcome.
**supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,** remain.
**supplex,** *gen.* **supplicis,** suppliant.
**supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** pray to.
**suprā,** *prep. with acc.*, above.
**surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum,** rise.
**sūs, suis,** M., hog; *pl.*, swine.
**suus, -a, -um,** his, her, its, their *(in reflexive meaning).*

## T

**tabernāculum, -ī,** N., tent.
**taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** be silent.
**tālis, -e,** such.
**tam,** *adv.*, so, as.
**tamen,** *adv.*, still, nevertheless, however.
**tandem,** *adv.*, at length.
**tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum,** touch.
**tantus, -a, -um,** so great.
**Tarquinius, -ī,** M., Tarquinius, *a king of Rome.*
**tēctum, -ī,** N., house, roof.
**tēcum,** with you *(see Section* **351,** *c).*
**tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum,** cover, protect.
**tēla, -ae,** F., web *(a piece of cloth in a loom).*
**Tēlemachus, -ī,** M., Telemachus, *the son of Ulysses.*
**temerārius, -a, -um,** rash.
**temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** try.
**tempus, temporis,** N., time.
**tenebrae, -ārum,** F. *pl.*, darkness.
**teneō, -ēre, -uī,** hold.
**tergum, -ī,** N., back.
**ternī, -ae, -a,** three by three, by groups of three.

**terra, -ae,** F., land.
**tertius, -a, -um,** third.
**texō, -ere, -uī, -tum,** weave.
**Tiberis, Tiberis,** M., the Tiber.
**tibi,** to you, you (*as indirect object*).
**timeō, -ēre, -uī,** fear.
**timet,** (he, she, it) fears.
**timidus, -a, -um,** timid.
**Titus, -ī,** M., Titus (*name of a man or boy*); **Titus Herminius,** *a Roman senator.*
**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum,** raise, lift.
**torreō, -ēre, -uī, tostum,** roast.
**tostus, -a, -um,** roasted.
**tot,** *indeclinable adj.*, so many.
**tōtus, -a, -um,** the whole, all.
**tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** treat; handle.
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum,** drag, draw, pull.
**tranquillē,** *adv.*, quietly.
**trāns,** *prep. with acc.*, across.
**trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go across.
**trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum,** pierce.
**tremō, -ere, -uī,** tremble.
**trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** be in confusion, hurry about in alarm.
**trēs, tria,** three.
**triumphus, -ī,** M., triumph.
**Troja, -ae,** F., Troy.
**tū,** you (*of one person*).
**tua,** *see* **tuus.**
**tum,** *adv.*, then.
**Tusculum, -ī,** N., Tusculum, *a town not far from Rome.*
**tūtō,** *adv.*, safely.
**tūtus, -a, -um,** safe.
**tuus, -a, -um,** your, yours (*of one person*).

U

**ubi,** *adv.*, where, when.
**ubinam,** *adv.*, where in the world? where?
**ulterior, -ius,** farther.
**ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** howl.
**Ulīxēs, Ulīxis,** M., Ulysses, *a Greek hero.*
**umerus, -ī,** M., shoulder.
**umquam,** *adv.*, ever.
**unda, -ae,** F., wave.
**unde,** *adv.*, from where.
**undique,** *adv.*, on all sides, from all sides.
**ūnus, -a, -um,** one.
**urbs, urbis,** F., city.
**usque,** *adv.*, all the way, as far as.
**ut,** *adv.*, as, how.
**uter, -tra, -trum,** which (*of two*)?
**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** each (*of two*), both.
**uxor, -ōris,** F., wife.

V

**vae,** *interjection*, woe, alas (for)!
**vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** wander.
**valdē,** *adv.*, very, very much.
**valē,** farewell, good-by (*imperative of* **valeō**).
**valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus,** be well, be strong.
**Valerius, -ī,** M., Valerius, *a Roman consul.*
**validus, -a, -um,** strong, well.
**vāllum, -ī,** N., rampart, wall.
**vāpulō, -āre, -āvī** (*active forms translated as passive*), be beaten, be flogged.
**vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** lay waste, destroy.
**vehementer,** *adv.*, violently, strongly.
**vel,** *adv.*, even; *conj.*, or.

**vellus, velleris,** N., fleece.
**venēnum, -ī,** N., poison, magic drug.
**veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** worship, reverence, revere.
**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum,** come.
**venter, ventris,** M., stomach, belly.
**ventus, -ī,** M., wind.
**verbera, -um,** N. *pl.*, blows.
**verbum, -ī,** N., word.
**vērō,** *adv.*, in truth, indeed. *See* **immō.**
**vertō, -ere, vertī, versum,** turn.
**vērus, -a, -um,** true; **vērum** *or* **vēra** *as noun*, the truth.
**vesperī,** in the evening.
**vester, -tra, -trum,** your, yours (*of more than one person*).
**vestīmentum, -ī,** N., garment; coverlet, blanket.
**vestis, vestis,** F., garment.
**vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum,** forbid.
**via, -ae,** F., street, road.
**victī, -ōrum,** M. *pl.* (*past participle of* **vincō** *as noun*), the conquered, the vanquished.
**victōria, -ae,** F., victory.
**vidēmus,** we see.
**vident,** (they) see.
**videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum,** see.
**videor, -ērī, vīsus sum,** seem.
**videt,** (he, she) sees.
**vigil, vigilis,** M., sentinel.
**vigilia, -ae,** F., watch (*a division of time*).
**vīgintī,** *indeclinable numeral adj.*, twenty.
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum,** conquer, defeat.
**vinculum, -ī,** N., chain.
**vīnum, -ī,** N., wine.
**vir, virī,** M., man.
**vīrēs, vīrium,** *plural of* **vīs.**
**virtūs, -tūtis,** F., manhood, courage.
**vīs** (*noun*), *see App. Section* **7** (3), F., violence; *pl.* **vīrēs,** strength.
**vīs** (*verb*), *see* **volō,** *page 165.*
**vīta, -ae,** F., life.
**vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victum,** live.
**vīvus, -a, -um,** alive.
**vix,** *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
**vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** call.
**volō, velle, voluī,** wish, am willing.
**volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** fly.
**vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** devour, feed.
**vōs,** you (*plural, nominative and accusative*).
**vōx, vōcis,** F., voice; **magna vōx,** a loud voice.
**vulnerātus, -a, -um** (*participle of* **vulnerō** *as adj.*), wounded.
**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** wound.
**vulpēs, vulpis,** F., fox.

A

**about,** dē, *prep. with abl.*
**accept,** accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
**again,** iterum, *adv.*
**aid,** auxilium, -ī, N.
**alive,** vīvus, -a, -um.
**all,** omnis, -e.
**ally,** socius, -ī, M.
**alone,** sōlus, -a, -um.
**also,** quoque; etiam, *advs.*
**always,** semper, *adv.*
**America,** America, -ae, F.
**Amphinomus,** Amphinomus, -ī, M.
**and,** et, -que, *conjs.*
**animal,** bestia, -ae, F.; animal, animālis, N.
**announce,** nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**answer,** respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
**appear,** appāreō, -ēre, -uī.
**approach,** appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**archer,** sagittārius, -ī, M.
**army,** exercitus, -ūs, M.
**arrow,** sagitta, -ae, F.
**ask,** interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**at once,** statim, *adv.*
**attack** (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
**attack** (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**away, be away, be distant,** absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
**ax,** secūris, secūris, F.

B

**bank,** rīpa, -ae, F.
**barbarian,** barbarus, -ī, M.
**battle,** proelium, -ī, N.
**be, am,** sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
**beast,** bestia, -ae, F.
**beautiful,** pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
**because,** quod, *conj.*
**began,** coepī, coepisse.
**beggar,** mendīcus, -ī, M.
**behind,** post, *prep. with acc.*
**believe,** crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
**bend,** flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
**best,** optimus, -a, -um.
**bird,** avis, avis, F.
**blind,** caecus, -a, -um.
**body,** corpus, corporis, N.
**book,** liber, librī, M.
**bow,** arcus, -ūs, M.
**boy,** puer, puerī, M.
**branch,** rāmus, -ī, M.
**brave,** fortis, -e.
**bravely,** fortiter, *adv.*
**bread,** pānis, pānis, M.
**break down,** frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
**bridge,** pōns, pontis, M.
**bring, bring into,** addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
**brother,** frāter, frātris, M.
**but,** sed, *conj.*
**by,** ā, ab, *prep.*

C

**call,** vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**camp,** castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
**can, am able,** possum, posse, potuī.
**capture,** capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
**carry,** portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**cave,** antrum, -ī, N.; caverna, -ae, F.
**cavern,** caverna, -ae, F.
**centurion,** centuriō, -ōnis, M.

**certain,** certus, -a, -um; **to be certain,** prō certō habēre; **a certain (person** *or* **thing),** quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.
**change,** mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**choose,** dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
**Circe,** Circē, Circae, F.
**citizen,** cīvis, cīvis, M.
**city,** urbs, urbis, F.
**close,** claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
**cloud,** nūbēs, nūbis, F.
**column,** columna, -ae, F.
**come,** veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
**companion,** comes, comitis, M.
**conceal,** cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**consul,** cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
**cottage,** casa, -ae, F.
**country,** terra, -ae, F.; **(native) country,** patria, -ae, F.
**credible,** crēdibilis, -e.
**cross,** trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
**cruel,** crūdēlis, -e.
**cup,** pōculum, -ī, N.
**Cyclops,** Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, M.

## D

**danger,** perīculum, -ī, N.
**daughter,** fīlia, -ae, F.
**day,** diēs, diēī, M., F.
**daybreak,** prīma lūx.
**dead,** mortuus, -a, -um.
**dear,** cārus, -a, -um.
**deep,** altus, -a, -um.
**deer,** cervus, -ī, M.
**defeat,** superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
**defend,** dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
**delay,** moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
**demand,** postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**desert,** dēserō, -ere, uī, -tum.
**despair of,** dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**destroy,** dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
**dinner,** cēna, -ae, F.
**divide,** dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
**dog,** canis, canis, M.
**door,** jānua, -ae, F.
**doubt,** dubium, -ī, N.
**drink,** bibō, -ere, bibī.
**drive,** agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
**drive back,** repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
**drive out,** expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum.

## E

**easy,** facilis, -e.
**eat,** edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum.
**eight,** octō, *indeclinable numeral.*
**enchantress,** maga, -ae, F.
**enemy,** inimīcus, -ī, M.; hostis, hostis, M.
**enter,** intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**escape,** effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus.
**Etruscan,** Etrūscus, -ī, M.
**Eumaeus,** Eumaeus, -ī, M.
**Europe,** Eurōpa, -ae, F.
**evening, in the evening,** vesperī.
**expect,** expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**eye,** oculus, -ī, M.

## F

**fact,** *see* **thing.**
**faithful,** fidēlis, -e.
**faithless,** perfidus, -a, -um.
**far,** longē, *adv.*
**farewell,** valē, *pl.* valēte.
**farmer,** agricola, -ae, M.
**father,** pater, patris, M.
**fear,** timeō, -ēre, -uī.
**few, a few,** paucī, -ae, -a.

**field,** ager, agrī, M.
**fierce,** ferus, -a, -um.
**fifty,** quīnquāgintā, *indeclinable numeral.*
**fight,** pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**find,** inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
**fire,** ignis, ignis, M.
**first,** prīmus, -a, -um.
**flee,** fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
**fleece,** vellus, velleris, N.
**flight,** fuga, -ae, F.
**flock,** grex, gregis, M.
**flower,** flōs, flōris, M.
**food,** cibus, -ī, M.
**foot,** pēs, pedis, M.
**for, on behalf of,** prō, *prep. with abl.*
**forces,** cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
**forehead,** frōns, frontis, F.
**forest,** silva, -ae, F.
**form** (*noun*), fōrma, -ae, F.
**form** (*a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
**formerly,** ōlim, *adv.*
**fortify,** mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
**friend,** amīcus, -ī, M.
**from,** ē, ex; dē; ā, ab, *preps.*
**front, in front of,** ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
**full,** plēnus, -a, -um.

G

**garden,** hortus, -ī, M.
**gate,** porta, -ae, F.
**Gaul** (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
**Gaul** (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī.
**general,** imperātor, -ōris, M.
**Germans,** Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
**gift,** dōnum, -ī, N.
**girl,** puella, -ae, F.
**give,** dō, dare, dedī, datum.
**go,** eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūm; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; **go away,** abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
**goat,** caper, caprī, M.
**god, a god,** deus, deī (*pl.* dī), M.
**golden,** aureus, -a, -um.
**good,** bonus, -a, -um; **very good,** optimus, -a, -um.
**Greek, a,** Graecus, -ī, M.
**ground, on the ground,** humī.
**guest,** hospes, hospitis, M.
**hall,** ātrium, -ī, N.
**happy,** fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis.

H

**hasten,** properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**hate,** ōdī, ōdisse.
**have,** habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
**he,** is, *gen.* ejus.
**head,** caput, capitis, N.
**hear,** audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
**helmet,** galea, -ae, F.
**help** (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
**help** (*verb*), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
**here,** hīc, *adv.*
**himself, herself, itself,** suī, sibi, sē (sēsē).
**his, her, its,** *when reflexive,* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive,* ejus.
**hold,** teneō, -ēre, -uī.
**home,** domus, -ūs, F.; **at home,** domī.
**horn,** cornū, -ūs, N.
**horse,** equus, -ī, M.
**house,** tēctum, -ī, N.
**hungry, be hungry, hunger,** ēsuriō, -īre.
**hurry,** properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**husband,** vir, virī, M.; marītus, -ī, M.

I

**if,** sī, *conj.*
**immortal,** immortālis, -e.
**impudent,** impudēns, *gen.* impudentis.
**in,** in, *prep. with abl.*
**in front of,** ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
**in vain,** frūstrā, *adv.*
**industrious,** impiger, -gra, -grum.
**inhabitant,** incola, -ae, M., F.
**into,** in, *prep. with acc.*
**invite,** invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**Ireland,** Hibernia, -ae, F.
**island,** īnsula, -ae, F.
**it,** is, ea, id.

J

**jar,** amphora, -ae, F.
**javelin,** pīlum, -ī, N.
**jump,** dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum.

K

**kill,** interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
**kindle,** accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
**kind,** benignus, -a, -um.
**king,** rēx, rēgis, M.
**kingdom,** rēgnum, -ī, N.
**know,** sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

L

**lamb,** agnus, -ī, M.
**large,** magnus, -a, -um.
**lay down,** dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum.
**lay waste,** vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**lead,** dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
**leader,** dux, ducis, M.
**left, left hand,** sinistra, -ae, F.
**legion,** legiō, -ōnis, F.
**letter,** epistula, -ae, F.
**lie,** jaceō, -ēre, -uī.
**lieutenant,** lēgātus, -ī, M.
**light,** lūx, lūcis, F.
**little,** parvus, -a, -um.
**live,** habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**long,** longus, -a, -um.
**long, for a long time,** diū, *adv.*
**look around,** circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**love,** amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

M

**maid, maid servant,** ancilla, -ae, F.
**man,** vir, virī; homō, hominis, M.
**many,** multī, -ae, -a.
**march** (*noun*), iter, itineris, N.
**Marcus,** Mārcus, -ī, M.
**master,** dominus, -ī, M.
**me,** *as direct object,* mē; *as indirect object,* mihi.
**Menelaus,** Menelāus, -ī, M.
**Mercury,** Mercurius, -ī, M.
**messenger,** nūntius, -ī, M.
**middle, middle of,** medius, -a, -um.
**mine,** *see* **my.**
**money,** pecūnia, -ae, F.
**monster,** mōnstrum, -ī, N.
**moon,** lūna, -ae, F.
**morning, in the morning,** māne, *adv.*
**mother,** māter, mātris, F.
**mountain,** mōns, montis, M.
**murmur,** murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**my, mine,** meus, -a, -um.

N

**name,** nōmen, nōminis, N.
**native country,** patria, -ae, F.
**near,** prope, *prep. with acc.*
**Neptune,** Neptūnus, -ī, M.
**news, what news,** quid novī.

**night,** nox, noctis, F.; **at night,** noctū, *adv.*
**no** (*adjective*), nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer,** nōn jam.
**nobody,** nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem (*gen. and abl. from* nūllus).
**not,** nōn, *adv.*
**now,** nunc, *adv.*

O

**obey,** pāreō, -ēre, -uī.
**offer,** offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
**often,** saepe, *adv.*
**old man,** senex, *gen.* senis, M.
**on all sides,** undique, *adv.*
**once, at once,** statim, *adv.*
**one by one,** singulī, -ae, -a.
**open,** aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum.
**others, the others,** reliquī, -ōrum; cēterī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
**ought,** dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*impersonal*) oportet, -ēre, -uit.
**our,** noster, -tra, -trum.
**outside,** extrā, *prep. with acc.*

P

**Palatine,** Palātīnus, -ī, M.
**part,** pars, partis, F.
**perhaps,** fortasse, *adv.*
**perish,** pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
**permit, it is permitted,** licet, licēre, licuit.
**picture,** pictūra, -ae, F.
**pierce,** trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum.
**place,** locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N.).
**plan,** cōnsilium, -ī, N.
**please,** placeō, -ēre, -uī.
**poet,** poēta, -ae, M.
**powerful,** potēns, *gen.* potentis.
**praise,** laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**prepare,** parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**prepared,** parātus, -a, -um.
**present,** dōnum, -ī, N.
**prisoner,** captīvus, -ī, M.
**protect,** tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
**punish,** pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
**put out,** extinguō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum.

Q

**queen,** rēgīna, -ae, F.

R

**ram,** ariēs, arietis, M.
**read,** legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
**rear,** tergum, -ī, N.
**receive,** accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
**recognize,** agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitum.
**redoubt,** castellum, -ī, N.
**remain,** maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
**renew,** renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**repulse,** repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
**resist,** resistō, -ere, restitī.
**restore,** restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
**return** (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, M.
**return** (*verb*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
**reward,** praemium, -ī, N.
**right, right hand,** dextra, -ae, F.
**river,** flūmen, flūminis, N.
**Roman** (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
**Roman** (*adjective*), Rōmānus, -a, -um.
**Rome,** Rōma, -ae, F.
**Romulus,** Rōmulus, -ī, M.
**rose,** rosa, -ae, F.
**rouse,** excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**run,** currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

S

**safe,** tūtus, -a, -um.
**sailor,** nauta, -ae, M.
**same,** īdem, eadem, idem.
**save,** servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**say,** dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
**school,** schola, -ae, F.
**sea,** mare, maris, N.
**see,** videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
**seek,** quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
**seem,** videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (*passive of* videō).
**seize,** occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**self, himself, herself, itself,** ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
**senator,** senātor, -ōris, M.
**send,** mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
**sentinel,** vigil, vigilis, M.
**servant,** servus, -ī, M.
**Sextus,** Sextus, -ī, M.
**sharp,** acūtus, -a, -um.
**sheep,** ovis, ovis, F.
**shield,** scūtum, -ī, N.
**ship,** nāvis, nāvis, F.
**shore,** lītus, lītoris, N.
**shout,** clāmor, clāmōris, M.
**show,** ostendō, -dere, -dī, -tum.
**sight,** cōnspectus, -ūs, M.
**silence,** silentium, -ī, N.
**sing,** cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**sister,** soror, sorōris, F.
**sit,** sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
**slave,** servus, -ī, M.
**sleep,** somnus, -ī, M.
**small,** parvus, -a, -um.
**soldier,** mīles, mīlitis, M.
**sometimes,** interdum, *adv.*
**son,** fīlius, -ī, M.
**sound,** sonus, -ī, M.
**Spain,** Hispānia, -ae, F.
**Sparta,** Sparta, -ae, F.
**spear,** hasta, -ae, F.
**speak,** loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
**splendid,** splendidus, -a, -um.
**staff,** baculum, -ī, N.
**stand,** stō, stāre, stetī, statum.
**stand about,** circumstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statum.
**star,** stella, -ae, F.
**story,** fābula, -ae, F.
**street,** via, -ae, F.
**strength,** vīrēs, vīrium, F. *pl.*
**strong,** validus, -a, -um.
**suddenly,** subitō, *adv.*
**sufficiently,** satis, *adv.*
**suitor,** procus, -ī, M.
**summer,** aestās, aestātis, F.; **in summer,** aestāte.
**sweet,** dulcis, -e.
**swim,** natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**sword,** gladius, -ī, M.

T

**take,** capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.
**talk,** loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
**tell,** narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**tent,** tabernāculum, -ī, N.
**thank,** grātiās agō (agere, ēgī, āctum).
**that** (*pl.* **those**), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
**themselves,** suī, sibi, sē (sēsē).
**thing,** rēs, reī, F.
**think,** putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**this,** hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
**through,** per, *prep. with acc.*
**Tiber,** Tiberis, Tiberis, M.
**throw,** jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
**throw away,** rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
**thus,** ita, *adv.*

**tie together,** colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**time,** tempus, temporis, N.
**tired, tired out,** dēfessus, -a, -um.
**Titus,** Titus, -ī, M.
**to,** ad, in, *preps. with acc.*
**today,** hodiē, *adv.*
**tomorrow,** crās, *adv.*
**toward,** ad, *prep. with acc.*
**town,** oppidum, -ī, N.
**triumph,** triumphus, -ī, M.
**Troy,** Troja, -ae, F.
**turn,** vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.
**twist,** contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum.
**two,** duo, duae, duo.

U

**Ulysses,** Ulīxēs, Ulīxis, M.
**uncle,** avunculus, -ī, M.
**unfortunate,** miser, misera, miserum.
**unhappy,** miser, misera, miserum.

V

**vain, in vain,** frūstrā, *adv.*
**victory,** victōria, ae, F.
**voice,** vōx, vōcis, F.

W

**walk,** ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**wander,** errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**war,** bellum, -ī, N.
**warn,** moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
**watch** (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, F.
**watch** (*verb*), spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**weapons,** arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
**well,** bene, *adv.*
**where,** ubi, *adv.*
**which,** *relative pronoun,* quī, quae, quod.
**who,** *interrogative,* quis, quid; *relative,* quī, quae, quod.
**why,** cūr, *adv.*
**window,** fenestra, -ae, F.
**wine,** vīnum, -ī, N.
**winter,** hiems, hiemis, F.; **in winter,** hieme.
**wise,** sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis.
**wish,** volō, velle, voluī.
**with,** cum, *prep. with abl.*
**without,** sine, *prep. with abl.*
**woman,** fēmina, -ae, F.
**work,** labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
**wound,** vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Y

**year,** annus, -ī, M.
**yesterday,** herī, *adv.*
**young man,** juvenis, -is, M.
**your,** *of one person,* tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one person,* vester, -tra, -trum.

# INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections, unless page reference is specified.)


*ā, ab*, with ablative, 126 *b*.
as prefix, 180, 288.
Ablative Case, absolute, 399-403.
of accompaniment, 264-265.
of agent, 264-265.
of cause, App. 45 (12).
of degree of difference, App. 45 (9).
of description, 430.
of manner, App. 45 (6).
of means, 263-265.
of respect, App. 45 (10).
of separation, App. 45 (1).
of time at which, 328.
with prepositions, 55, 126 *b*.
with *ūtor*, etc., App. 45 (13).
Accent, p. xv.
Accusative Case, as direct object, 26.
of duration of time, 329.
of extent, 441.
with prepositions, 137.
*ad*, with accusative, see Accusative.
as prefix, 180, 233-234, 288.
Adjectives, defined, (3) p. xix.
agreement of, 18, 25, 32, 39, 56, 87, 93, 112.
comparison of, 431, 433, 434, 435
declension of comparatives, 432
numeral, cardinal, 423-424.
ordinal, 447.
interrogative, 161-162.
position of, 14.
possessive, 18 *a*, 120.
predicate, (9) p. 5, 410 *a*.
substantive use of, 113.
first and second declension of, 111, 118.
third declension of, 306-307, 312.
Adverb, defined, (11) p. 8.
comparison of, 437-438.
formation of, 436, 438.
Agreement, of adjectives, 18, 25, 32, 39, 56, 87, 93, 112.
of appositives, 62.
of participles, 235.
of relative pronouns, 301.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
*aliquis*, declension of, 392.
*alius*, genitive and dative of, 255 *a*.
Alphabet, p. xiii.
*ante*, with accusative, 137.
Antecedent, defined, (5) p. xx.
Apposition, and appositive, defined (18) p. 23.
cases in apposition, 62.
Article, defined, (3) *a*, p. xx.
lack of in Latin, 13.
Assimilation of Consonants, 233-234, 289-291.
Cardinal Numerals, 423-424.
Case, defined, (13) p. 10.
of English nouns and pronouns, (13) p. 10.
names of Latin cases, 26, 32, 39.
Case Endings, first declension, 24, 37, 59, 61.
second declension, 104, 105, 106.
third declension, 105, 202.
fourth declension, 317.
fifth declension, 415.
*castra*, form and meaning, 126 *a*.
*circum*, as prefix, 180-181, 288.
*coepī*, use of, 325 *a*.
Comparative Adjectives, declension of, 432.
Comparison, of adjectives, 431, 433-435.
of adverbs, 437-438.
Compound Verbs, with dative, 429.
Conjugation, first, 76, 77, 123, 154, 155, 167, 184, 225, 246, 247, 358, 359, 370, 371.
second, 143, 144, 154, 155, 167, 184, 225, 246, 247, 358, 359, 370, 371.
third, 252, 258, 276, 292.
fourth, 270, 276, 292.
see under *eō, ferō, fīō, possum, sum, volō*.

Conjunctions, defined, (15) p. 17.
*cum*, preposition, with ablative, 55.
enclitic, 351 *c*.
as a prefix, 289.

Dative Case, with adjectives, 48.
with compound verbs, 429.
with special verbs, 377.
as indirect object, 37, 39.
position of, 49 (2).
Declension, defined, 83 *a*.
how determined, 61 *a*.
first declension, 59, 61.
second, 83, 84, 92, 98, 99, 104, 106.
third, 200, 201, 207, 212, 213, 218, 219.
fourth, 317.
fifth, 415.
of comparative adjectives, 432.
Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, 132, 149, 172.
Deponent Verbs, defined, 440.
Derivatives, English, from Latin, 5-9, 68-70, 130-131, 233-234, 288-291, 337.
Description, ablative of, 430.
genitive of, 430 *a*.
"do" in negative sentences, 19.
*duo*, declension of, 424.

*ego*, declension of, 351.
Emphatic Forms of English Verbs, 76 *a*.
Enclitics, 351 *c*, 379 *a*, 382.
*eō*, conjugation of, 322, 340.
compounds of, 323.
*ē*, *ex*, with ablative case, 55.
use of, in distinction from *ā* and *ab*, 126 *b*.
as a prefix, 131, 181.
Expletive "there" not translated into Latin, 54.

*ferō*, conjugation of, App. 36.
*fīō*, conjugation of, 439.
Future Tense, see Tense.
Future Perfect Tense, see Tense.

Gender, of nouns and pronouns, (22) p. 34.
in first declension, 85.
in second declension, 86.
in third declension, 219.
in fourth declension, 317.
in fifth declension, 415 *a*.
Genitive Case, English, defined, (13) p. 10; 32.
Latin genitive defined, 31-32.
of description, 430 *a*.
of possession, 31.
of the whole, App. 42 (2).
position of, 49 (1).
Gerund, defined, 445.
declension of, 445.
uses of, 445.
Grammar, elementary principles of, (1)-(25).

*hic*, declension of, 132.
as adjective, 132.
as pronoun, 174.

*īdem*, declension of, 364.
*ille*, declension of, 149.
as adjective, 149.
as pronoun, 174.
Imperative Mood, defined, 338.
conjugation of, 339-340.
Imperfect Tense, see Tense.
Impersonal Verbs, 416-418.
*in*, preposition with ablative, 55.
as a prefix, 290.
*in-*, inseparable prefix, 291.
Indicative Mood, defined, 123 *b*, App. 47.
Indirect Discourse, 408-410.
Indirect Object, defined, (14) p. 14.
dative of, in Latin, 37, 39.
English phrase with "to" as equivalent, 38.
Infinitive Mood, defined, (21) p. 31.
future, 444.
present, of regular verbs, 77, 143, 294.
past, of regular verbs, 247.
of deponent verbs, 440.
of *sum*, 189 *a*.
complementary, App. 49 (1).
in indirect discourse, 409.
Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective, 160-162.
Intransitive Verbs, defined, (20) p. 29.
*ipse*, declension of, App. 25.

*is*, declension of, 172.
as adjective, 173.
as pronoun, 172-173, 352.

Latin, in ancient times, 1.
modern Latin (Romance languages), 2-4.
Latin Element in English, 5.
Latin terms in law and medicine, 7.
forms of English derivatives from Latin, 8-9.
new words from Latin, 6.
*licet*, use of, 416, 418.

*meus*, use of, 350.
Mood, see Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive.
"my," an adjective in Latin, 18 *a*.

*-ne*, sign of a question, 382.
Nominative Case, defined, (13) p. 10.
as subject, 26.
in predicate, (9) p. 5, 12, 410 *a*.
*nōnne*, sign of a question, 382.
*nōs*, declension of, 351.
*noster*, use of, 350.
Noun, defined, (1) p. xix.
*num*, sign of a question, 382.
Number, of nouns and pronouns, (12) p. 10.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
Numerals, adjectives, cardinal, 423-424.
ordinal, 447.

*ob*, as a prefix, 233-234.
Object, direct, defined, (10) p. 5; 12.
accusative of, 26.
Object, indirect, defined, (14) p. 14.
dative of, 37.
phrases in English equivalent to, 38.
*oportet*, use of, 416-417.
Order of Words, in Latin, 14, 49.
verb and adjective, 14.
position of genitive, 49 (1).
position of dative, 49 (2).
Ordinal Numerals, 447.

Participles, defined, (25) p. 98.
agreement of, 235.
future, 442-443.
past, 235.
present, 393.
declension of, 394.
use of, 394 *a*.
Past Perfect Tense, see Tense.
Perfect Tense, see Tense.
Person of Nouns and Pronouns, (16) p. 19.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
Personal Endings of Verbs in Latin, active, 78.
passive, 124.
in perfect tense, 225 *b*.
Personal Pronouns, 350-352.
Possessives, of the first and second persons, 18 *a*, 120.
of the third person, reflexive, 194.
of third person, not reflexive, 195.
omission of, 195 *a*.
*possum*, conjugation of, 345.
Predicate, defined, (9) p. 5.
adjective, (9) p. 5; 410 *a*.
noun, (9) p. 5; 12, 410 *a*.
Prefixes, inseparable, 182, 291.
changes in spelling, 183.
prepositions as, 131, 180, 181, 233, 234, 288, 290.
Prepositions, defined, (17) p. 21.
with English nouns, (17) p. 21.
with Latin ablative, 55, 126 *b*.
with Latin accusative, 137.
as prefixes, 131, 180, 181, 183, 233, 234, 288-290.
Present Tense, see Tense.
Principal Parts of Verbs, 240, 241, 243, 245, 253.
Progressive Forms of English Verbs, 76 *a*, 123 *a*, 154, 394 *a*.
Pronoun, defined, (4) p. xx.
omitted in Latin as subject, 44.
antecedent of, (5) p. xx.
classes of, (6) p. xx.
interrogative, 160, 162.
personal, declension of, 351.
use of, 350, 352.
reflexive, 281-282.
relative, 299-301.

Pronunciation, xiii-xix.
Roman method, xiii-xv.
English method, xvi-xix.

*-que*, enclitic use of, 379 *a*.
Questions, forms of with *-ne*, *nōnne*, *num*, 382.
*quīdam*, declension of, 390.
*quis*, declension of, 160, 162.
*quisquam*, declension of, 446.
*quisque*, declension of, 448.
Quotations, see Indirect Discourse.

Reflexive Pronouns, 281-282.
Relative Pronouns, 299-301.
Romance Languages, 2-4.
numerals, from Latin, 388.

Signs of Tenses, see Tense.
Special Verbs with the Dative, 377.
Stem of Verbs, present, 242.
perfect, 242.
participial, 242.
use of, 244.
*sub*, with ablative and accusative, 277*a*.
Subject, defined, (8) p. 4; 12.
Substantive Use of Adjectives, 113.
Suffixes, Latin, 335-336.
*sum*, conjugation of, 71, 189, 226, 247, 340.
*suus*, use of, 194.
Synopsis of Verbs, 372.

Tense, defined, (24) pp. 62-63.
present, 71, 76, 123, 144, 270.
imperfect, 154-155, 167, 276.
imperfect and perfect distinguished, 227.
future, 184 *a*, 293.
perfect, 224, 225, 246, 271; personal endings of, 225 *b*.
past perfect, 357-359.
future perfect, 369, 370, 371.
signs of tenses, imperfect, 155 *a*; future, 184 *a*, 293; past perfect, 358; future perfect, 370.
"there," as an expletive, 54.
Time, at which, ablative, 328.
duration, accusative, 329.
"to," in English phrases equivalent to indirect objects, 38.
in English phrases denoting place to which, 138.
in English phrases after verbs of motion, 138.
Transitive Verbs, defined, (20) p. 29.
*trēs*, declension of, 424.
*tū*, declension of, 351.
*tuus*, use of, 350.

Verbs, defined, (2) p. xix.
agreement of, (19) p. 28.
number of, (19) p. 28.
person of, (19) p. 28.
transitive and intransitive, defined, (20) p. 29.
compound verbs with dative, 429.
deponent verbs, 440.
impersonal verbs, 416-418.
position of, 14.
*vester*, use of, 350.
*vir*, declension of, 104 *a*.
*vīs*, declension of, App. 7(3).
Vocative Case, defined, 105.
form of, 105, 389.
Voice, defined, (23) p. 49.
*volō*, conjugation of, 391.
*vōs*, declension of, 351.

Word Order, 14, 49.
Word Study, 68-70, 130-131, 180-183, 233-234, 288-291, 335-337.

"yes," how expressed in Latin, 382 *b*.
"you," English uses and Latin equivalents, 71 *a*.
"your," an adjective in Latin, 18 *a*.